



Reserve Bank of New Zealand Act 1989

Public Act 1989 No 157
Date of assent 20 December 1989
Commencement see section 1(2)

Contents

	Page
Title <i>[Repealed]</i>	15
1 Short Title and commencement	15
1A Purpose	16
2 Interpretation	16
3 Interpretation of provisions relating to false or misleading information	25
3A Transitional, savings, and related provisions	25
4 Act to bind the Crown	25
Part 1	
Constitution of Reserve Bank of New Zealand	
5 Reserve Bank of New Zealand	25
6 Branches and agencies <i>[Repealed]</i>	26
Part 2	
Functions and powers of Reserve Bank	
<i>Central bank</i>	
7 Bank to act as central bank	26

Note

The Parliamentary Counsel Office has made editorial and format changes to this version using the powers under subpart 2 of Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019.

Note 4 at the end of this version provides a list of the amendments included in it.

This Act is administered by the Reserve Bank of New Zealand.

Monetary policy

8	Function to formulate monetary policy through MPC	26
9	Function to implement monetary policy	26
10	Remit for MPC	27
11	Other matters relating to remit	27
12	Order providing for different economic objective or objectives	27
13	Order must include replacement remit	28
14	Effect of order on current remit	28
15	Period may be extended	28
15A	Revocation of order	29
15B	Functions under sections 8 and 9 not affected	29
15C	Regular reports on monetary policy	29
15D	Longer-term report on formulation and implementation of monetary policy	30

Foreign exchange

16	Dealing in foreign exchange by Bank	30
17	Power of Minister to direct Bank to deal in foreign exchange within guidelines	31
18	Power of Minister to fix exchange rates for foreign exchange dealing by Bank	31
19	Effect of directions on operational objectives	32
20	Effect of directions on monetary policy	32
21	Foreign exchange gains and losses	33
22	Temporary suspension of foreign exchange business	33
23	Bank to advise Minister on foreign exchange matters	34
24	Foreign reserves	34

Currency

25	Issue of currency by Bank	34
26	Power of Bank to call in currency	35
27	Legal tender	35
28	Defacing bank notes	35
29	Making or issuing of other bank notes or coins	36
30	Reproduction or imitation of currency	36

Other functions and powers

31	Bank to act as lender of last resort	37
32	Bank may provide settlement account services <i>[Repealed]</i>	37
33	Policy advice	37
34	Government banking business <i>[Repealed]</i>	37
35	Financial products registry services <i>[Repealed]</i>	37
36	Bank may require financial institution to supply information	37
37	Failure to supply information	38
38	Requirement that information be audited	38

39	Powers	39
----	--------	----

Part 3
Management of Reserve Bank
Governor and Deputy Governor

40	Governor	39
41	Duties of Governor	39
42	Conditions of appointment of Governor	40
43	Deputy Governor	41
44	Term of appointment and conditions of appointment of Deputy Governor	41
45	Extension of term of Governor or Deputy Governor	41
45A	Validity of appointments	42
46	Disqualification of Governor and Deputy Governor	42
47	Incapacity of Governor and Deputy Governor	44
48	Vacancy in office of Governor	45
48A	Deputy Governor may act pending appointment	46
48B	Vacancy in office of Deputy Governor	46
49	Removal of Governor from office	46
50	Removal of Deputy Governor from office by Order in Council	48
51	Delegation	49

Board of directors

52	Board of directors	51
53	Duties of Board	51
53A	Board must prepare annual report	53
53B	Board must supply reports or other information to Minister	54
53C	Bank must supply reports or information to Board	54
54	Membership of Board	54
55	Term of office of non-executive directors	55
56	Considerations affecting appointment of non-executive directors	55
57	Extraordinary vacancies	55
58	Disqualification of non-executive directors	56
59	Removal from office of non-executive directors	57
59A	Chairperson and deputy chairperson of Board	57
60	Meetings of Board	58
60A	Teleconference meeting	58
60B	Directors to be notified of meetings	59
60C	Who presides at meetings of Board	59
61	Directors to disclose interests	60
62	Committees	60
63	Fees and expenses of non-executive directors	61

Monetary policy committee

63A	Establishment of monetary policy committee	61
-----	--	----

63B	Functions of MPC	61
63C	Membership of MPC	61
63D	Charter	62
63E	Content of charter	62
63F	Replacement charter	63
63G	Consultation about replacement charter	63
63H	Publication of charter	63
63I	Status of charter <i>[Repealed]</i>	63
63J	Code of conduct	64
63K	Content of code	64
63L	Publication and status of code	64
63M	Other matters	65

Appointment procedure

63N	Appointment procedure	65
-----	-----------------------	----

Part 4

Use of words ‘bank’, ‘banker’, and ‘banking’

Limit on use of restricted words in name or title

64	Limit on use of restricted words in name or title	66
65	Bank may authorise use of restricted words in name or title	67
66	Certain persons exempt from application of section 64	68
66A	Application of Companies Act 1993	68

Limit on use of restricted words in advertisement

66B	Limit on use of restricted words in advertisement	69
-----	---	----

Powers of Bank in relation to use of restricted words

66C	Power to obtain information	69
66D	Power to require change of name, etc	70
66E	Power to appoint person to enter and search premises	70
66F	Requirements on entering and searching premises	71
66G	Confidentiality of information or documents	71
66H	Limits on further disclosure of information or documents published or disclosed under section 66G	72
66I	Procedure for obtaining warrants	73
66J	Effect of warrant <i>[Repealed]</i>	73
66K	Effect of proceedings	74
66L	Effect of final decision that exercise of powers under section 66E unlawful	74

Penalty for offences against this Part

66M	Penalty for offences	74
-----	----------------------	----

Part 5
Registration of banks and prudential supervision of registered banks

67A	Interpretation in this Part	75
67	Registration and prudential supervision	75
68	Exercise of powers under this Part	76
68A	Trans-Tasman co-operation	76
68B	Bank to have regard to directions about government policy objectives	77

Registration of banks

69	Register	77
70	Application for registration	78
71	Voluntary removal of name from register	78
72	Offence for person who is not registered bank to hold itself out to be registered bank	80
73	Determination of applications	80
73A	Further matters to which Bank must have regard if applicant is overseas person	81
73B	Further matters to which Bank must have regard if applicant is subsidiary of overseas person	81
74	Conditions of registration	82
75	Publication of principles	83
76	Registration of certain persons	83
77	Cancellation of registration	83
77A	Changes of ownership	85
77B	Effect of section 77A on contracts, etc	86
78	Carrying on business in prudent manner	86
79	Annual fee <i>[Repealed]</i>	87
80	Credit rating of registered banks	87

Financial disclosure by registered banks

81	Public disclosure of information or data by registered banks	87
81AA	Further matters that may be prescribed	88
81AB	Disclosure statement not required to include information or data about customers or clients of registered banks	90
81AC	Duty to supply information or data to registered bank	90
81A	Bank to consult	91
82	Disclosure statements must be signed	91
83	Bank may require disclosure statement to be corrected	92

Advertising by registered banks

[Repealed]

84	Interpretation <i>[Repealed]</i>	92
85	Content of advertisements by registered banks <i>[Repealed]</i>	92

86	Regulations <i>[Repealed]</i>	93
87	Offence to advertise in contravention of regulations <i>[Repealed]</i>	93
88	Bank may prohibit advertisements by registered banks <i>[Repealed]</i>	93
	<i>Provisions applying to disclosure statements</i>	
89	Offence to fail to publish required information in disclosure statement	93
89A	Offence to publish false or misleading disclosure statements	93
89B	Offence to fail to make most recent disclosure statement publicly available	94
89C	Other offences in relation to disclosure statements	94
90	Civil liability	94
91	Defences	95
92	Fair Trading Act 1986 not affected	95
	<i>Supply of information</i>	
93	Supply of information by registered banks for purposes of prudential supervision	95
93A	Scope of notice under section 93	96
93B	Certain persons may be required to supply information to registered banks	96
93C	Supply of information by other persons for purposes of prudential supervision	97
94	Requirement that information, data, or forecasts be audited	97
95	Bank may require report relating to registered banks, etc	97
95A	Bank may require report under section 95 to be published	98
96	Disclosure of information to Bank by auditors	98
97	Auditor to inform of intention to disclose	99
98	Protection of auditors	99
	<i>Access to information by home country supervisor</i>	
98A	Access to information by home country supervisor	99
98B	Duties of person on receipt of notice under section 98A	100
	<i>Powers to obtain information and documents</i>	
99	Powers to obtain information and documents	101
100	Requirements on entering and searching premises	102
	<i>Investigations</i>	
101	Investigation of affairs of registered bank	102
102	Powers of person appointed to carry out investigation	102
103	Offences in relation to investigations	104
104	Requirements to be complied with by person carrying out investigation	104
	<i>Miscellaneous provisions</i>	
105	Confidentiality of information	105

106	Procedure for obtaining warrants	107
107	Effect of warrant	108
108	Effect of proceedings	108
109	Effect of final decision that exercise of powers under section 99 unlawful	109
110	Effect of final decision that exercise of powers under section 101 or section 102 unlawful	110
	<i>Reserve Bank may give directions</i>	
111	Bank may require registered bank to consult <i>[Repealed]</i>	110
112	Bank may give advice and assistance <i>[Repealed]</i>	111
113	Bank may give directions	111
113A	Scope of directions	112
113B	Power to remove, replace, or appoint directors	112
114	Offence to contravene directions	113
115	Offence to disclose giving of direction	113
116	Miscellaneous provisions with respect to directions and dispositions	114
	<i>Statutory management of registered banks</i>	
117	Statutory management of registered banks and associated persons	115
118	Grounds on which registered bank may be declared to be subject to statutory management	117
119	Advisory committee	117
120	Statutory manager to comply with directions of Bank	118
121	Considerations affecting exercise of powers by statutory manager	118
121A	Statutory manager to avoid actions likely to have detrimental effect	119
122	Moratorium	119
122A	Definitions of terms relating to qualifying derivatives	123
122B	Matters relating to possession or control of collateral	124
122C	Bank may reduce or extend stay on exercise of rights to enforce security interest over collateral	126
122D	Matters Bank must be satisfied of under section 122C(3)(b)	126
122E	Publication and status of notice under section 122C	127
123	Statutory manager may incorporate company under Companies Act 1993 to acquire business of branch of foreign institution	127
124	Vesting of property subject to security	128
125	Proof of vesting	129
126	Prohibition against removal of assets	129
127	Statutory manager may suspend payment of money owing	130
128	Management of registered bank to vest in statutory manager	130
129	Powers of statutory manager	131
130	Statutory manager empowered to carry on business of registered bank	131
131	Statutory manager may pay creditors and compromise claims	132

132	Sale of registered bank	132
133	Consents not required under other Acts	133
134	Sale of property or assets subject to a security	133
135	Proof of transactions	135
136	Liquidation of registered banks	136
137	Provisions applying where liabilities included in sale	137
138	Power to trace property improperly disposed of	138
139	Application of certain provisions of Companies Act 1993	138
	<i>Interpretation relating to covered bonds</i>	
139A	Interpretation	139
139B	Meaning of covered bond SPV	140
139C	Meaning of issuer	140
	<i>Registration of covered bond programmes</i>	
139D	Register of registered covered bond programmes	141
139E	Requirement, and application, for registration of covered bond programme	142
139F	Determination of application for registration of covered bond programme	143
139G	Bank must approve or decline application	144
139H	Requirements relating to registered covered bond programmes	145
	<i>Cover pool monitor</i>	
139I	Cover pool monitor	146
	<i>Statutory management, etc, of issuer</i>	
139J	Limitation on application of statutory management, etc, provisions to covered bond SPV	147
	<i>Miscellaneous provisions</i>	
140	Application of this Part to joint statutory managers, associated persons, and subsidiaries	148
141	Termination of appointment of statutory manager	149
142	Statutory manager may apply to High Court for directions	150
143	Prior winding up, liquidation, or receivership to cease	150
143A	Continuation of statutory management	151
144	Termination of statutory management	151
145	Obligations incurred by statutory manager	153
146	Indemnity <i>[Repealed]</i>	154
147	Registered bank not entitled to be informed about exercise of powers	154
148	Expenses of statutory management	154
149	Advances to statutory manager and members of advisory committee	154
150	Duty to deliver books and property to statutory manager	155
151	Offence to destroy, alter, or conceal records	155

152	Regulations relating to powers of Bank and statutory manager	156
152A	Regulations are confirmable instruments <i>[Repealed]</i>	157
153	Application of other Acts	157
154	Appointment of auditors	158
155	Annual accounts	159
156	Annual report by statutory manager	160

Penalties for offences against this Part

156AA	Penalty for miscellaneous offences	160
156AB	Penalty for offences relating to supply of information, etc	161
156AC	Penalty for offences relating to registration of banks, disclosure statements, prudential supervision of registered banks, etc	162

Part 5A

Retention of documents by banks

156A	Retention of documents by banks	164
------	---------------------------------	-----

Part 5B

Oversight of payment systems

General

156B	Exercise of powers under this Part	165
------	------------------------------------	-----

Supply of information relating to payment systems

156C	Requirement to supply information relating to payment system	166
156D	Offence to fail to supply information	166
156E	Requirement that information be audited	166
156F	Offence not to comply with requirement for audit	167

Disclosure of information relating to payment systems

156G	Disclosure of information	167
156H	Limits on further disclosure of information	168
156I	Application of other enactments to information published or disclosed under section 156G	168

Penalties for offences against this Part

156J	Penalties for offences	169
------	------------------------	-----

Part 5C

Designated settlement systems

General

156K	Exercise of powers under this Part	169
156L	Limit on FMA's powers in relation to Bank	170

Designation

[Repealed]

156M	Definitions for this Part	170
------	---------------------------	-----

	<i>Designation</i>	
156N	Designation of settlement system	173
	<i>Effect of designation</i>	
	<i>[Repealed]</i>	
156O	Joint regulators' recommendations subject to procedure in sections 156Y to 156ZA	175
	<i>Effect of designation</i>	
156P	Application of this Part to pure payment systems	175
156Q	Rules of designated settlement system are valid and enforceable	176
156R	Settlements must not be reversed, etc	177
156S	Limits on application of section 156R(1)	177
156T	Netting is valid and enforceable	178
156U	Interrelationship between netting and Companies Act 1993 and Insolvency Act 2006	178
	<i>Procedure for making designation</i>	
	<i>[Repealed]</i>	
156V	Underlying transactions, settlements, and limits on effect of sections 156Q, 156R, and 156T	179
156W	Interrelationship with other enactments	180
156X	Transfer of property in accordance with rules is effective	180
	<i>Procedure for making designation</i>	
156Y	Application for designation	181
156Z	Consideration of application	181
156ZA	Decision on application	182
	<i>Amendments to rules</i>	
156ZB	Joint regulators must be notified of proposed amendments to rules	183
156ZC	Proposed amendments to rules may be disallowed	183
	<i>Variation and revocation of designation</i>	
156ZD	Variation of designation	184
156ZE	Revocation of designation	184
156ZF	Settlement and netting not affected by variation or revocation of designation	185
156ZG	Application for variation or revocation of designation	185
156ZH	Either joint regulator may independently begin review of designation	186
156ZI	Matters joint regulators may have regard to in recommending variation or revocation of designation	186
156ZJ	Procedure for variation or revocation of designation	187
	<i>Obligations to give notice and supply information</i>	
156ZK	Contact person must be notified of insolvency event	187

156ZL	Supply of information relating to designated settlement system	188
	<i>Disclosure of information</i>	
156ZM	Disclosure of information between joint regulators	188
156ZN	Disclosure of information to third parties	189
156ZO	Limits on further disclosure of information	190
156ZP	Application of other enactments to information published or disclosed under section 156ZN	190
	<i>Penalties for offences against this Part</i>	
156ZQ	Penalties for offences	190
	Part 5D	
	Deposit takers	
	<i>[Repealed]</i>	
	<i>Preliminary provisions</i>	
	<i>[Repealed]</i>	
157A	Exercise of powers under this Part <i>[Repealed]</i>	191
157B	Interpretation <i>[Repealed]</i>	191
157C	Deposit taker defined <i>[Repealed]</i>	191
157D	Application of Part <i>[Repealed]</i>	191
157E	Bank to consult before recommending making of regulations under this Part <i>[Repealed]</i>	192
157F	Principles to be taken into account under this Part <i>[Repealed]</i>	192
157G	Exemptions from Part <i>[Repealed]</i>	192
157H	Effect of exemption <i>[Repealed]</i>	192
	<i>Credit ratings</i>	
	<i>[Repealed]</i>	
157I	Deposit taker must have current credit rating <i>[Repealed]</i>	192
157J	Bank may approve rating agencies <i>[Repealed]</i>	192
157K	Regulations relating to credit ratings <i>[Repealed]</i>	192
	<i>Governance requirements</i>	
	<i>[Repealed]</i>	
157L	Governance requirements <i>[Repealed]</i>	193
	<i>Risk management</i>	
	<i>[Repealed]</i>	
157M	Deposit taker must have and comply with risk management programme <i>[Repealed]</i>	193
157N	Risk management programme must be provided to trustee and must be amended if required by trustee <i>[Repealed]</i>	193
157O	Trustee may require deposit taker to have risk management programme audited <i>[Repealed]</i>	193

*Minimum capital requirement**[Repealed]*

157P	Regulations may impose requirement that trust deed sets out minimum capital that deposit taker is required to maintain <i>[Repealed]</i>	193
157Q	Deposit takers and trustees must ensure trust deed sets out minimum capital deposit taker is required to maintain <i>[Repealed]</i>	194
157R	Deposit taker must maintain not less than minimum capital prescribed <i>[Repealed]</i>	194

*Capital ratio requirement**[Repealed]*

157S	Regulations may impose requirement that trust deed includes capital ratio <i>[Repealed]</i>	194
157T	Deposit takers and trustees must ensure capital ratio included in trust deed <i>[Repealed]</i>	194
157U	Deposit taker must maintain capital ratio required to be included in trust deed <i>[Repealed]</i>	194

*Restrictions on related party exposures**[Repealed]*

157V	Regulations may impose requirement that trust deed includes maximum limit on exposures to related parties <i>[Repealed]</i>	194
157W	Regulations may incorporate by reference framework for calculation of maximum limit on exposures to related parties <i>[Repealed]</i>	195
157X	Deposit takers and trustees must ensure maximum limit on exposures to related parties is included in trust deed <i>[Repealed]</i>	195
157Y	Deposit taker must not exceed maximum limit on related party exposures <i>[Repealed]</i>	195

*Liquidity requirements**[Repealed]*

157Z	Regulations may impose requirement that liquidity requirements be included in trust deed <i>[Repealed]</i>	195
157ZA	Deposit takers and trustees must ensure liquidity requirements are included in trust deeds <i>[Repealed]</i>	195
157ZB	Deposit takers must comply with liquidity requirements in trust deeds <i>[Repealed]</i>	195

*Other matters relating to trust deeds**[Repealed]*

157ZC	Amendment to trust deed must be treated as if authorised to be made <i>[Repealed]</i>	196
-------	---	-----

157ZD	Trustee may execute amendment to trust deed <i>[Repealed]</i>	196
	<i>Obligations of trustees to Bank</i>	
	<i>[Repealed]</i>	
157ZE	Bank may require trustee to attest as to deposit taker's compliance with requirements <i>[Repealed]</i>	196
157ZF	Trustee must report to Bank non-compliance or likely non-compliance by deposit taker <i>[Repealed]</i>	196
157ZG	Obligation on trustees to disclose information to Bank in certain circumstances <i>[Repealed]</i>	196
157ZH	Protection of trustees <i>[Repealed]</i>	196
	<i>Investigation and enforcement powers of Bank</i>	
	<i>[Repealed]</i>	
157ZI	Bank may require report relating to deposit taker <i>[Repealed]</i>	197
157ZJ	Power to obtain information and documents <i>[Repealed]</i>	197
157ZK	Limitation on information to be provided <i>[Repealed]</i>	197
157ZL	Limitations on entering and searching place <i>[Repealed]</i>	197
157ZM	Search warrant may be issued <i>[Repealed]</i>	197
157ZN	Privileges <i>[Repealed]</i>	197
	<i>Confidentiality of information</i>	
	<i>[Repealed]</i>	
157ZO	Confidentiality of information <i>[Repealed]</i>	197
157ZP	Person who does not comply with section 157ZO commits offence <i>[Repealed]</i>	198
157ZQ	Application of Official Information Act 1982, etc <i>[Repealed]</i>	198
	<i>Offences and penalties</i>	
	<i>[Repealed]</i>	
157ZR	Offences by deposit takers against this Part <i>[Repealed]</i>	198
157ZS	Other offences by deposit takers against this Part <i>[Repealed]</i>	198
157ZT	Defence for deposit takers charged with offences against this Part <i>[Repealed]</i>	198
157ZU	Power of court to discharge deposit taker <i>[Repealed]</i>	198
157ZV	Liability of directors <i>[Repealed]</i>	198
157ZW	Offences by trustees against this Part <i>[Repealed]</i>	198
157ZX	Penalties for offences <i>[Repealed]</i>	199
	<i>Miscellaneous</i>	
	<i>[Repealed]</i>	
157ZY	Matters relating to regulation-making powers under this Part <i>[Repealed]</i>	199
157ZZ	Bank must review and report on operation of this Part <i>[Repealed]</i>	199

Part 6

Financial and accountability matters

157	Financial year	199
	<i>Income and expenditure</i>	
158	Meaning of notional surplus income <i>[Repealed]</i>	199
159	Funding agreements	199
160	Contents of funding agreements	200
161	Funding agreements to be ratified by House of Representatives	201
162	Determination of annual dividend	201
	<i>Accountability documents</i>	
162AA	Purpose of accountability documents	201
162AB	Assessment of regulatory impacts of policies	202
	<i>Statement of intent</i>	
162A	Obligation to provide statement of intent	203
162B	Content of statement of intent	203
162C	Process for providing statement of intent to Minister	204
162D	Amendments by Bank to statement of intent	205
162E	Statement of intent stands referred to House of Representatives	205
	<i>Annual reports</i>	
163	Annual reports and accounts	205
163A	Bank not Crown entity	206
164	Contents of financial statements	206
165	Management statements	207
	<i>Financial stability reports</i>	
165A	Financial stability reports	207
	<i>Audits</i>	
166	Auditor-General to be auditor of Bank	208
167	Performance audit	208

Part 7

Miscellaneous provisions

168	Bank to be good employer	209
169	Bank to exhibit sense of social responsibility	209
170	Application of Banking Act 1982 to Bank <i>[Repealed]</i>	209
171	Conflict with other Acts	209
172	Obligations under this Act not limited	209
173	Regulations	209
174	Consents under regulations	212
175	Offences against regulations	213
175A	Privilege against self-incrimination no excuse	213
175B	Admissibility of self-incriminating statements	213

176	Penalties for offences	214
177	Time for filing charging document	214
178	Evidence	214
179	Protection from liability	215
179A	Indemnity	215
180	Amendment to Income Tax Act 1976 <i>[Repealed]</i>	216
181	Amendments to Securities Act 1978 <i>[Repealed]</i>	216
182	Amendments to Superannuation Schemes Act 1989 <i>[Repealed]</i>	216
183	Amendments to Trustee Banks Restructuring Act 1988 <i>[Repealed]</i>	216
184	Amendment to Securities Amendment Act 1988 <i>[Repealed]</i>	216
185	Consequential amendments <i>[Repealed]</i>	216
186	Repeals and savings <i>[Repealed]</i>	216
187	References to trading banks to be read as references to registered banks	217
188	Savings <i>[Repealed]</i>	217
189	Procedure for applying this Act to persons subject to statutory management under Reserve Bank of New Zealand Act 1964 <i>[Repealed]</i>	217
190	Transitional provisions in relation to Part 5A and Part 5C of Reserve Bank of New Zealand Act 1964 <i>[Repealed]</i>	217
191	Transitional provisions in relation to office holders <i>[Repealed]</i>	217
192	Transitional provision in relation to accounts of Bank <i>[Repealed]</i>	217
	Schedule 1	218
	Transitional, savings, and related provisions	
	Schedule 2	223
	Remit and monetary policy committee	
	Schedule 3	239
	General provisions relating to material incorporated by reference	
	<i>[Repealed]</i>	
	Schedule 4	239
	General provisions relating to search warrants issued under Part 5D	
	<i>[Repealed]</i>	

Title *[Repealed]*

Title: repealed, on 10 September 2008, by section 4 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 59).

1 Short Title and commencement

- (1) This Act may be cited as the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Act 1989.

- (2) Except as provided in section 181(5) and (9), this Act shall come into force on 1 February 1990.

Section 1(2): amended, on 24 March 1995, by section 12 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1995 (1995 No 5).

1A Purpose

- (1) The purpose of this Act is to promote the prosperity and well-being of New Zealanders, and contribute to a sustainable and productive economy, by providing for the Reserve Bank of New Zealand, as the central bank, to be responsible for—

- (a) formulating and implementing monetary policy directed to the economic objectives set out in subsection (1A), while recognising the Crown's right to determine economic policy; and
- (b) promoting the maintenance of a sound and efficient financial system; and
- (c) issuing bank notes and coins in New Zealand to meet the needs of the public; and
- (d) carrying out other functions, and exercising powers, specified in this Act.

- (1A) The economic objectives are—

- (a) achieving and maintaining stability in the general level of prices over the medium term; and
- (b) supporting maximum sustainable employment.

- (2) This section does not limit the functions or powers given to the Bank by any other enactment.

Section 1A: inserted, on 10 September 2008, by section 5 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 59).

Section 1A(1): replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 4 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 1A(1A): inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 4 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

2 Interpretation

- (1) In this Act, unless the context otherwise requires,—

bank note or **note** means any negotiable instrument used or circulated, or intended for use or circulation, as currency

banking group has the meaning given to it in the Orders in Council made under section 81

charter means a charter issued under this Act (*see* section 63F and clauses 5 to 7 of Schedule 1)

code of conduct means a code of conduct for members of the MPC that is approved under this Act (*see* section 63J and clause 8 of Schedule 1)

debt security has the same meaning as in section 8 of the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013

Deputy Governor means the Deputy Governor of the Bank appointed under section 43 or 48B

designated settlement system has the meaning set out in section 156M

director, except in relation to the Bank, means—

- (a) a person occupying the position of director by whatever name called:
- (b) in the case of an entity that does not have directors as such, any trustee, manager, or other person who acts in relation to that entity in the same or a similar fashion as a director would act were that entity a company incorporated in New Zealand under the Companies Act 1993

disclosure statement means the document referred to in section 81(2)(a)

document means a document in any form, whether signed or initialled or otherwise authenticated by its maker or not; and includes—

- (a) any writing on any material:
- (b) any information recorded or stored by means of any tape-recorder, computer, or other device; and any material subsequently derived from information so recorded or stored:
- (c) any label, marking, or other writing that identifies or describes any thing of which it forms part, or to which it is attached by any means:
- (d) any book, map, plan, graph, or drawing:
- (e) any photograph, film, negative, tape, or other device in which 1 or more visual images are embodied so as to be capable (with or without the aid of some other equipment) of being reproduced

economic objective means an economic objective set out in section 8(1) (or in an Order in Council made under section 12)

financial institution means any person including a body of persons whether incorporated or not, who carries on the business of borrowing and lending money, or providing financial services, or both, and without limiting the generality of the foregoing includes—

- (a) an insurer that issues, or is liable under, life policies within the meaning of section 6(1) of the Insurance (Prudential Supervision) Act 2010; and includes any branch, division, or office of that insurer; and
- (b) a building society as defined in section 2 of the Building Societies Act 1965; and
- (c) a registered bank; and
- (d) a specified person or class of persons (including a body or bodies of persons, whether incorporated or not) who is or are declared by the

Governor-General, by Order in Council, to be a financial institution or institutions for the purposes of this Act (*see* subsection (5))

financial product has the same meaning as in section 7 of the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013

financial year has the meaning given to it by section 157

FMA means the Financial Markets Authority established under Part 2 of the Financial Markets Authority Act 2011

foreign exchange means—

- (a) the bank notes or other currency, postal notes, or money orders of any country other than New Zealand;
- (b) promissory notes and bills of exchange payable otherwise than in New Zealand currency;
- (c) a right to receive payment in the currency of a country other than New Zealand;
- (d) an obligation to make payment in the currency of a country other than New Zealand;
- (e) a debt security in respect of which any amount payable is payable in a country other than New Zealand or in a foreign currency

formulating, in relation to monetary policy, has the meaning set out in section 8(3)

Governor means the Governor of the Bank appointed under section 40 or 48

holding company means a holding company within the meaning of section 5 of the Companies Act 1993

home country supervisor means any central bank, authority, or body in any country other than New Zealand that exercises functions in relation to a parent bank or an overseas incorporated registered bank that correspond with, or are similar to, those conferred on the Bank under Part 5

home jurisdiction means,—

- (a) in the case of an overseas person that is a body corporate, the country in which that body is incorporated;
- (b) in the case of an overseas person that is an unincorporated body, the country in which that body has its head office or principal place of business

licensed insurer has the same meaning as in section 6(1) of the Insurance (Prudential Supervision) Act 2010

managed investment scheme has the same meaning as in section 9 of the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013

Minister means the Treasurer, or other Minister of the Crown who, under the authority of any warrant or with the authority of the Prime Minister, is for the

time being responsible for the administration of this Act or particular provisions of this Act

MPC or monetary policy committee means the committee of the Bank that is established under section 63A

net income, in relation to a financial year, means the total revenue of the Bank reported in its statement of financial performance for that year calculated after deducting all expenses incurred by the Bank in that year

New Zealand chief executive officer, in relation to an overseas incorporated registered bank, means—

- (a) the most senior officer of that bank who is ordinarily resident in New Zealand; or
- (b) another person who may be nominated by that bank and agreed to in writing by the Bank; or
- (c) if section 82(3) applies, an employee of that bank who has been specified by the Bank under that section

non-voting security, in relation to any body, means a specified security that does not confer a voting right

operating expenses, in relation to a financial year,—

- (a) includes all expenses incurred by the Bank and reported in its statement of financial performance for that year; but
- (b) does not include—
 - (i) interest, foreign exchange losses, and losses (or provision for losses) on financial instruments or revaluation of financial instruments; or
 - (ii) any payments made to the Crown under section 21; or
 - (iii) any expenses agreed by the Minister and the Bank not to be operating expenses

operator, in relation to either a settlement system or a payment system, means any person that provides clearing, settlement, or processing services in respect of that system

overseas bank means any person that is formed, licensed, or registered as a bank in any country other than New Zealand

overseas person means—

- (a) a body corporate incorporated outside New Zealand; or
- (b) an unincorporated body that has its head office or principal place of business outside New Zealand

parent bank means an overseas bank that is a holding company of a registered bank

participant, in relation to either a settlement system or a payment system,—

- (a) means a person who has agreed to participate in either a settlement system or a payment system in accordance with the rules of that system; and
- (b) in the case of a designated settlement system, includes an operator of the settlement system if the designation under section 156N(3)(b) so provides

payment system—

- (a) means a system or arrangement for—
 - (i) the clearing or settlement of payment obligations; or
 - (ii) the processing of payment instructions; and
- (b) includes any instruments, rules, and procedures that relate to the matters referred to in paragraph (a)

qualifying interest, in relation to a specified security, means—

- (a) the legal or beneficial ownership of the specified security; or
- (b) the power to exercise, or control the exercise of, any voting right attached to the specified security; or
- (c) the power to acquire or dispose of the specified security; or
- (d) the power to control the acquisition or disposition of the specified security by another person; or
- (e) the powers referred to in paragraphs (b) to (d) under, or by virtue of, any trust, agreement, arrangement, or understanding relating to the specified security

registered bank means a person whose name is entered in the register maintained under section 69 or who continues to be a registered bank by virtue of the provisions of section 76

remit means a remit issued under this Act (*see* sections 10 and 13, clauses 2 to 4 of Schedule 1, and clause 6 of Schedule 2)

remit advice means the advice given by the Bank under clause 2 of Schedule 2

Reserve Bank or the Bank means the Reserve Bank of New Zealand constituted under this Act

restricted word—

- (a) means the words “bank”, “banker”, and “banking”; and
- (b) includes—
 - (i) any of those words as part of any other word:
 - (ii) a translation of those words into another language (whether or not the translation of those words is part of any other word)

settlement system has the meaning set out in section 156M

significant influence, in relation to a registered bank, means—

- (a) the ability to directly or indirectly appoint 25% or more of the board of directors (or other persons exercising powers of management, however described) of the registered bank; or
- (b) a direct or indirect qualifying interest in 10% or more of the voting securities issued or allotted by the registered bank

specified operator has the meaning set out in section 156M

specified security has the meaning given to security in section 6(1) of the Overseas Investment Act 2005

subsidiary means a subsidiary within the meaning of section 5(1)(a)(iii) and (b) of the Companies Act 1993

trade mark has the meaning given to it by section 5(1) of the Trade Marks Act 2002

voting right, in relation to any body,—

- (a) means a currently exercisable right to cast a vote at meetings of shareholders or members of that body; but
- (b) does not include a right to vote that is exercisable only in 1 or more of the following circumstances:
 - (i) during a period in which a payment or distribution (or part of a payment or distribution) in respect of the security that confers the voting right is in arrears or some other default exists:
 - (ii) on a proposal that affects rights attached to the security that confers the voting right:
 - (iii) on a proposal to put the body into liquidation or voluntary administration:
 - (iv) on a proposal for the disposal of the whole, or a material part, of the property, business, or undertaking of the body:
 - (v) during the liquidation, receivership, voluntary administration, bankruptcy, or statutory management of the body; and
- (c) does not include a right to vote that is exercisable only for a special, immaterial, or remote matter that is inconsequential to the control of the body

voting security, in relation to any body, means a specified security that confers a voting right.

- (2) For the purposes of section 36, Parts 4 and 5, and sections 179 and 179A, a person is an **associated person** of a financial institution or a registered bank, as the case may be, if—

- (a) that person directly or indirectly controls the management of the financial institution or registered bank; or

- (b) that person has a direct or indirect qualifying interest in 20% or more of the voting or non-voting securities issued by the financial institution or registered bank; or
 - (c) that financial institution or registered bank directly or indirectly controls the management of that person; or
 - (d) that financial institution or registered bank has a direct or indirect qualifying interest in 20% or more of the voting or non-voting securities issued by that person.
- (3) For the purposes of section 77A, **transaction** includes the—
- (a) sale or transfer of property or financial products; and
 - (b) issue or allotment of financial products; and
 - (c) entering into, or giving effect to a provision in, a contract or arrangement; and
 - (d) arriving at, or giving effect to, an understanding.
- (4) For the purposes of Part 5, a holding company of a registered bank has a **substantial interest** in a body if—
- (a) that holding company directly or indirectly controls the management of that body; or
 - (b) that holding company has a direct or indirect qualifying interest in 20% or more of the voting securities issued by that body.
- (5) An Order in Council under paragraph (d) of the definition of financial institution in subsection (1) is secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements).

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 2; 1986 No 131 s 2

Legislation Act 2019 requirements for secondary legislation made under this section

Publication	PCO must publish it on the legislation website and notify it in the <i>Gazette</i>	LA19 s 69(1)(c)
Presentation	The Minister must present it to the House of Representatives, unless it relates exclusively to an individual (in which case a transitional exemption applies under Schedule 1 of the Legislation Act 2019)	LA19 s 114, Sch 1 cl 32(1)(a)
Disallowance	It may be disallowed by the House of Representatives	LA19 ss 115, 116

This note is not part of the Act.

Section 2(1) **banking group**: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 3(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 2(1) **charter**: inserted, on 21 December 2018, by section 5(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 2(1) **clearing house**: repealed, on 24 November 2009, by section 4(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

Section 2(1) **code of conduct**: inserted, on 21 December 2018, by section 5(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 2(1) **debt security**: inserted, on 1 December 2014, by section 150 of the Financial Markets (Repeals and Amendments) Act 2013 (2013 No 70).

Section 2(1) **Deputy Chief Executive**: repealed, on 1 April 2019, by section 5(3) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 2(1) **Deputy Governor**: replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 5(3) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 2(1) **designated payment system**: repealed, on 24 November 2009, by section 4(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

Section 2(1) **designated settlement system**: inserted, on 24 November 2009, by section 4(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

Section 2(1) **director**: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 3(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 2(1) **disclosure statement**: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 3(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 2(1) **economic objective**: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 5(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 2(1) **financial institution** paragraph (a): replaced, on 8 September 2010, by section 241(1) of the Insurance (Prudential Supervision) Act 2010 (2010 No 111).

Section 2(1) **financial institution** paragraph (d): amended, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

Section 2(1) **financial institution** paragraph (d): amended, on 1 November 2006, by section 4 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2006 (2006 No 51).

Section 2(1) **financial product**: inserted, on 1 December 2014, by section 150 of the Financial Markets (Repeals and Amendments) Act 2013 (2013 No 70).

Section 2(1) **financial year**: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 3(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 2(1) **FMA**: inserted, on 1 May 2011, by section 82 of the Financial Markets Authority Act 2011 (2011 No 5).

Section 2(1) **foreign exchange** paragraph (e): amended, on 1 December 2014, by section 150 of the Financial Markets (Repeals and Amendments) Act 2013 (2013 No 70).

Section 2(1) **formulating**: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 5(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 2(1) **Governor**: replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 5(4) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 2(1) **holding company**: replaced, on 5 December 2013, by section 14 of the Companies Amendment Act 2013 (2013 No 111).

Section 2(1) **home country supervisor**: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 3(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 2(1) **home jurisdiction**: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 3(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 2(1) **licensed insurer**: inserted, on 8 September 2010, by section 241(1) of the Insurance (Prudential Supervision) Act 2010 (2010 No 111).

Section 2(1) **managed investment scheme**: inserted, on 1 December 2014, by section 150 of the Financial Markets (Repeals and Amendments) Act 2013 (2013 No 70).

Section 2(1) **Minister**: replaced, on 25 June 1997, by section 2 of the Treasurer (Statutory References) Act 1997 (1997 No 20).

Section 2(1) **MPC** or **monetary policy committee**: inserted, on 21 December 2018, by section 5(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 2(1) **net income**: inserted, on 25 January 2005, by section 37(1) of the Public Finance Amendment Act 2004 (2004 No 113).

Section 2(1) **New Zealand chief executive officer**: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 3(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 2(1) **non-voting security**: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 3(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 2(1) **operating expenses**: inserted, on 25 January 2005, by section 37(1) of the Public Finance Amendment Act 2004 (2004 No 113).

Section 2(1) **operating expenses** paragraph (b)(ii): amended, on 10 September 2008, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 59).

Section 2(1) **operating expenses** paragraph (b)(iii): inserted, on 10 September 2008, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 59).

Section 2(1) **operator**: replaced, on 24 November 2009, by section 4(3) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

Section 2(1) **overseas bank**: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 3(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 2(1) **overseas person**: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 3(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 2(1) **parent bank**: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 3(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 2(1) **participant**: replaced, on 24 November 2009, by section 4(4) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

Section 2(1) **payment system**: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 3(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 2(1) **qualifying interest**: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 3(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 2(1) **remit**: inserted, on 21 December 2018, by section 5(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 2(1) **remit advice**: inserted, on 21 December 2018, by section 5(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 2(1) **restricted word**: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 3(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 2(1) **security**: repealed, on 1 December 2014, by section 150 of the Financial Markets (Repeals and Amendments) Act 2013 (2013 No 70).

Section 2(1) **settlement system**: inserted, on 24 November 2009, by section 4(5) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

Section 2(1) **significant influence**: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 3(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 2(1) **specified operator**: inserted, on 24 November 2009, by section 4(5) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

Section 2(1) **specified security**: replaced, on 25 August 2005, by section 75 of the Overseas Investment Act 2005 (2005 No 82).

Section 2(1) **subsidiary**: replaced, on 5 December 2013, by section 14 of the Companies Amendment Act 2013 (2013 No 111).

Section 2(1) **trade mark**: inserted, 21 August 2003, by section 3(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 2(1) **voting right**: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 3(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 2(1) **voting right** paragraph (b)(iii): amended, on 1 November 2007, by section 41 of the Companies Amendment Act 2006 (2006 No 56).

Section 2(1) **voting right** paragraph (b)(v): amended, on 1 November 2007, by section 41 of the Companies Amendment Act 2006 (2006 No 56).

Section 2(1) **voting security**: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 3(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 2(2): replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 3(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 2(3): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 3(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 2(3)(a): amended, on 1 December 2014, by section 150 of the Financial Markets (Repeals and Amendments) Act 2013 (2013 No 70).

Section 2(3)(b): amended, on 1 December 2014, by section 150 of the Financial Markets (Repeals and Amendments) Act 2013 (2013 No 70).

Section 2(4): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 3(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 2(5): inserted, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

3 Interpretation of provisions relating to false or misleading information

For the purposes of this Act, a reference to information or data that is false or misleading includes a reference to information or data that is false or misleading by reason of—

- (a) the form or context in which it is published or supplied; or
- (b) the omission of any other information that is material in the form and context in which it is published or supplied.

3A Transitional, savings, and related provisions

The transitional, savings, and related provisions set out in Schedule 1 have effect according to their terms.

Section 3A: inserted, on 21 December 2018, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

4 Act to bind the Crown

This Act shall bind the Crown.

Part 1

Constitution of Reserve Bank of New Zealand

5 Reserve Bank of New Zealand

- (1) There shall continue to be a bank called the Reserve Bank of New Zealand.
- (2) The Bank shall be a body corporate with perpetual succession and shall be capable of acquiring, holding and disposing of real and personal property and of suing and being sued.
- (3) Without limiting any other provision of this Act, the Bank shall have the rights, powers, and privileges of a natural person.

- (4) The Bank is the same body corporate as that which was continued in existence by the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Act 1964.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 3(1), (2)

Section 5(2): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 7 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

6 Branches and agencies

[Repealed]

Section 6: repealed, on 1 April 2019, by section 35 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Part 2

Functions and powers of Reserve Bank

Central bank

7 Bank to act as central bank

The Bank shall act as the central bank for New Zealand.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 8(1)(a); 1973 No 16 s 5

Monetary policy

8 Function to formulate monetary policy through MPC

- (1) The Bank, acting through the MPC, has the function of formulating a monetary policy directed to the economic objectives of—
- (a) achieving and maintaining stability in the general level of prices over the medium term; and
 - (b) supporting maximum sustainable employment.
- (2) The MPC must, in acting under this section, have regard to—
- (a) the efficiency and soundness of the financial system; and
 - (b) any matter provided for in a remit under section 10(3)(d).
- (3) The function of **formulating** monetary policy includes deciding the approach by which the operational objectives set out in a remit are intended to be achieved.

Section 8: replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 8 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

9 Function to implement monetary policy

The Bank has the function of implementing monetary policy in accordance with this Act.

Section 9: replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 8 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

10 Remit for MPC

- (1) The Minister must, after having regard to remit advice, issue a remit for the MPC (the **remit**).
- (2) The remit must set out operational objectives for carrying out the function of formulating monetary policy.
- (3) The remit may specify or provide for the operational objectives in any way that the Minister thinks fit, including by specifying or providing for 1 or more of the following matters:
 - (a) a target or targets for an economic objective:
 - (b) a framework for weighting the economic objectives:
 - (c) defining any matters in connection with an economic objective:
 - (d) a requirement for the MPC to have regard to 1 or more matters in connection with seeking to achieve an economic objective.
- (4) A matter under subsection (3) must not be inconsistent with an economic objective.
- (5) The Minister must take all reasonable steps to ensure that a remit is in force at all times (whether the remit is issued by the Minister under this section or clause 3 of Schedule 1 or is in force under an Order in Council made under section 12, clause 4 of Schedule 1, or clause 6 of Schedule 2).

Section 10: replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 8 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

11 Other matters relating to remit

Part 1 of Schedule 2 provides for other matters relating to the remit.

Section 11: replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 8 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

12 Order providing for different economic objective or objectives

- (1) The Governor-General may, by Order in Council, on the advice of the Minister, direct the MPC to formulate, and the Bank to implement, monetary policy for 1 or more economic objectives for a period not exceeding 12 months that is specified in the order.
- (2) The economic objective or objectives may be—
 - (a) only 1 of the objectives specified in section 8 (instead of both); or
 - (b) 1 or more new objectives in addition to or instead of either or both of the economic objectives specified in section 8.
- (3) While the Order in Council is in force,—
 - (a) the MPC must formulate, and the Bank must implement, monetary policy in accordance with the economic objective or objectives specified in the Order in Council; and

- (b) the MPC and the Bank must disregard either or both of the economic objectives specified in section 8 if so required by the Order in Council.
- (4) An Order in Council under this section is secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements).

Legislation Act 2019 requirements for secondary legislation made under this section

Publication	PCO must publish it on the legislation website and notify it in the <i>Gazette</i>	LA19 s 69(1)(c)
Presentation	The Minister must present it to the House of Representatives	LA19 s 114, Sch 1 cl 32(1)(a)
Disallowance	It may be disallowed by the House of Representatives	LA19 ss 115, 116

This note is not part of the Act.

Section 12: replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 8 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 12(4): inserted, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

13 Order must include replacement remit

- (1) The order under section 12 must include a remit that will remain in force while the order is in force (in place of the remit that is suspended under section 14).
- (2) Section 10(2) to (4) applies with all necessary modifications.

Section 13: replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 8 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

14 Effect of order on current remit

- (1) The application of the current remit is suspended while the order under section 12 remains in force.
- (2) The following applies when the order is revoked:
- if the term of the current remit has not expired, that remit again comes into force (but may be replaced under clause 6 of Schedule 2);
 - if the term of the current remit has expired, a new remit must be issued to come into effect immediately after the revocation of the order (whether under section 10 or clause 6 of Schedule 2).
- (3) In this section, **current remit** means the remit that is in force immediately before an order under section 12 comes into force.

Section 14: replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 8 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

15 Period may be extended

- (1) The Governor-General may, by Order in Council, on the advice of the Minister, extend the period specified in an order under section 12 for a period not exceeding 12 months, and may in the same manner extend that period on successive occasions.
- (2) An extension may only be made before the end of the period to be extended.

- (3) An Order in Council under this section is secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements).

Legislation Act 2019 requirements for secondary legislation made under this section

Publication	PCO must publish it on the legislation website and notify it in the <i>Gazette</i>	LA19 s 69(1)(c)
Presentation	The Minister must present it to the House of Representatives	LA19 s 114, Sch 1 cl 32(1)(a)
Disallowance	It may be disallowed by the House of Representatives	LA19 ss 115, 116

This note is not part of the Act.

Section 15: replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 8 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 15(3): inserted, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

15A Revocation of order

- (1) An order under section 12 may be revoked at any time.
- (2) If the order is not revoked under subsection (1), the order is revoked on the close of the last day of the period specified in the order or of any extension of that period under section 15.
- (3) An order under this section is secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements).

Legislation Act 2019 requirements for secondary legislation made under this section

Publication	PCO must publish it on the legislation website and notify it in the <i>Gazette</i>	LA19 s 69(1)(c)
Presentation	The Minister must present it to the House of Representatives	LA19 s 114, Sch 1 cl 32(1)(a)
Disallowance	It may be disallowed by the House of Representatives	LA19 ss 115, 116

This note is not part of the Act.

Section 15A: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 8 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 15A(3): inserted, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

15B Functions under sections 8 and 9 not affected

- (1) Nothing in this Act or in any other Act limits or affects the obligation of the MPC or the Bank to carry out the functions under sections 8 and 9 (or under an order under section 12).
- (2) This section applies except as provided in sections 12 to 15A.

Section 15B: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 8 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

15C Regular reports on monetary policy

- (1) The Bank must, at least 4 times a year (or more frequently if required by the charter),—

- (a) deliver reports on monetary policy to the Minister; and
 - (b) publish a copy of each report on an Internet site maintained by, or on behalf of, the Bank.
- (2) The Governor must ensure that the report is approved by the MPC before it is delivered to the Minister.
- (3) Every report under this section must—
 - (a) specify the approach by which the MPC intends to achieve the operational objectives;
 - (b) state the MPC's reasons for adopting that approach;
 - (c) contain all other information required by the charter (if any).
- (4) Every report under this section stands referred, by virtue of this section, to the House of Representatives.

Section 15C: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 8 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

15D Longer-term report on formulation and implementation of monetary policy

- (1) The Bank must review and assess the formulation and implementation of monetary policy at least every 5 years (or more frequently if required by the charter).
- (2) The Bank must—
 - (a) deliver a report on the review and assessment to the Minister as soon as practicable after the review and assessment is completed; and
 - (b) publish a copy of the report on an Internet site maintained by, or on behalf of, the Bank.
- (3) The Governor must consult the MPC on a draft of the report under this section and the Governor must consider the comments (if any) of the MPC on the draft.
- (4) The report under this section must contain the information required by the charter (if any).
- (5) Every report under this section stands referred, by virtue of this section, to the House of Representatives.

Section 15D: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 8 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Foreign exchange

16 Dealing in foreign exchange by Bank

For the purposes of performing its functions and fulfilling its obligations under this Act or any other enactment, the Bank may deal in foreign exchange, on such terms and conditions as it thinks fit,—

- (a) with any person, including the Crown; and
- (b) on behalf of any person, including the Crown.

Section 16: replaced, on 10 September 2008, by section 7 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 59).

17 Power of Minister to direct Bank to deal in foreign exchange within guidelines

- (1) The Minister may, for the purpose of influencing the exchange rate or exchange rate trends, from time to time, by notice in writing to the Bank, direct the Bank to deal in foreign exchange within guidelines prescribed by the Minister in the notice.
- (2) Notwithstanding section 16, while the direction remains in force all foreign exchange dealing by the Bank shall comply with the direction.
- (3) The Minister may, from time to time, by notice in writing to the Bank, vary or revoke any direction given under subsection (1).

18 Power of Minister to fix exchange rates for foreign exchange dealing by Bank

- (1) Subject to this section, the Minister may from time to time, by notice in writing to the Bank,—
 - (a) direct that all foreign exchange dealing by the Bank shall be at rates of exchange, or within a range of rates of exchange, specified by the Minister in the direction:
 - (b) direct the Bank to deal in foreign exchange at those rates or within that range of rates with such persons or class or classes of persons as may be specified by the Minister in the direction.
- (2) Notwithstanding sections 16 and 17, the Bank shall, on receiving a direction under this section,—
 - (a) conduct its foreign exchange dealing at the rates, or within the range of rates, specified:
 - (b) deal in foreign exchange at those rates, or within that range of rates, with such of the persons or class or classes of persons specified in the direction as may require the Bank to do so.
- (3) The Minister may from time to time, by notice in writing to the Bank, vary or revoke any direction given under subsection (1).
- (4) The Minister shall not give a direction under subsection (1) unless the Minister has been authorised to do so by the Governor-General by Order in Council within 30 days before the direction is given and a separate authorisation shall be required for each separate occasion on which a direction is given.
- (5) The Minister shall give notice in the *Gazette* of the fact that a direction has been given and that a direction has been revoked.

- (6) An Order in Council under subsection (4) is secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements).

Legislation Act 2019 requirements for secondary legislation made under this section

Publication	PCO must publish it on the legislation website and notify it in the <i>Gazette</i>	LA19 s 69(1)(c)
Presentation	The Minister must present it to the House of Representatives	LA19 s 114, Sch 1 cl 32(1)(a)
Disallowance	It may be disallowed by the House of Representatives	LA19 ss 115, 116

This note is not part of the Act.

Section 18(6): inserted, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

19 Effect of directions on operational objectives

- (1) This section applies if the Governor considers that giving effect to a direction under section 17 or 18 (while not being inconsistent with the economic objectives of monetary policy) would be inconsistent with 1 or more operational objectives set out in a remit.
- (2) The Governor may, by notice in writing,—
 - (a) advise the Minister that the Bank will, in giving effect to the direction, be unable to give effect to those operational objectives; and
 - (b) request that the operational objectives be amended or replaced.
- (3) The Governor may only give a notice with the approval of the MPC.
- (4) If a notice is given,—
 - (a) the MPC and the Bank are not required to give effect to the existing operational objectives;
 - (b) the Minister must, within 1 month after the notice is given,—
 - (i) make a recommendation under clause 6 of Schedule 2 for the purpose of replacing a remit to amend or replace the operational objectives; or
 - (ii) give advice under section 12 for the purpose of amending or replacing the operational objectives in a remit that is included in an order in force under that section.
- (5) Subsection (4) does not apply if the Minister withdraws the direction.

Section 19: replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 9 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

20 Effect of directions on monetary policy

- (1) If the Governor considers that giving effect to a direction under section 17 or 18 would be inconsistent with the economic objectives of monetary policy, the Governor may, by notice in writing, advise the Minister that the MPC and the Bank do not propose to give effect to the direction.
- (2) The Governor may only give a notice with the approval of the MPC.

- (3) If a notice is given, the MPC and the Bank are not required to comply with the direction unless an Order in Council is made under section 12 that requires the MPC to formulate, and the Bank to implement, monetary policy in accordance with 1 or more economic objectives that are consistent with the direction.

Section 20: replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 10 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

21 Foreign exchange gains and losses

- (1) The Bank shall pay into a Crown Bank Account any exchange gains (whether realised or unrealised) made by the Bank as a result of dealing in foreign exchange under sections 17 and 18.
- (2) The Minister shall, without further appropriation, pay to the Bank out of a Crown Bank Account the amount of any exchange losses (whether realised or unrealised) incurred by the Bank as a result of dealing in foreign exchange under sections 17 and 18.

Section 21(1): amended, on 25 January 2005, pursuant to section 65R(3) of the Public Finance Act 1989 (1989 No 44).

Section 21(2): amended, on 25 January 2005, pursuant to section 65R(3) of the Public Finance Act 1989 (1989 No 44).

22 Temporary suspension of foreign exchange business

- (1) The Governor may, if the Governor is satisfied that it is necessary to avoid disorder in the foreign exchange market, from time to time, by notice in writing to all registered banks, direct that, subject to any exceptions specified in the notice, no registered bank shall, except with permission granted by the Bank, deal until further notice in any foreign exchange or foreign exchange of such kinds as are specified in the notice.
- (2) The Governor shall, as soon as practicable, give notice in writing to the Minister of the exercise of the power conferred under subsection (1).
- (3) Every notice under subsection (1) shall remain in force until it is revoked—
- (a) by Order in Council; or
 - (b) by notice in writing given by the Governor to all registered banks.
- (4) An obligation on a person to do a thing on a day on which that person is prevented from doing it by a notice under this section, or is unable to do it by reason of any such notice, shall be deemed to be complied with if that person does it as soon as practicable after the notice is revoked.
- (5) Where any transaction to which a notice issued under this section applies is subject to the Bills of Exchange Act 1908 or the Banking Act 1982, then, in relation to that transaction, every day on which the notice remains in force shall be deemed to be a non-business day for the purposes of the Bills of Exchange Act 1908.

- (6) An Order in Council under subsection (3)(a) is secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements).

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 26A; 1986 No 131 s 8

Legislation Act 2019 requirements for secondary legislation made under this section

Publication	PCO must publish it on the legislation website and notify it in the <i>Gazette</i>	LA19 s 69(1)(c)
Presentation	The Minister must present it to the House of Representatives	LA19 s 114, Sch 1 cl 32(1)(a)
Disallowance	It may be disallowed by the House of Representatives	LA19 ss 115, 116

This note is not part of the Act.

Section 22(6): inserted, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

23 Bank to advise Minister on foreign exchange matters

The Bank shall, from time to time, advise the Minister on—

- (a) foreign exchange rate systems:
- (b) the management of foreign reserves:
- (c) the operation of the foreign exchange market:
- (d) any other matters relating to foreign exchange.

24 Foreign reserves

- (1) The Minister shall, from time to time, in consultation with the Bank, determine the level at which, or the levels within which, foreign reserves shall be maintained for the purpose of enabling the Bank to exercise the powers conferred by this Act.
- (2) The Bank must hold and maintain foreign reserves at that level or within those levels.

Section 24(2): replaced, on 10 September 2008, by section 8 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 59).

Currency

25 Issue of currency by Bank

- (1) The Bank shall have the sole right to issue bank notes and coins in New Zealand.
- (2) The Bank shall determine the denominations, form, design, content, weight, and composition of its bank notes and coins.
- (3) Every bank note issued by the Bank before the commencement of this Act, and every coin issued by the Minister under the Decimal Currency Act 1964 or under the Coinage Act 1933 by virtue of the Decimal Currency Act 1964, which is legal tender at the commencement of this Act shall be deemed for all purposes to have been made or issued under this Act.

Compare: 1964 No 27 s 10; 1964 No 134 s 20(1), (3)

26 Power of Bank to call in currency

- (1) The Bank may, from time to time, with the prior consent of the Minister, by notice in the *Gazette*, call in any bank notes or coins issued or deemed to have been issued under this Act.
- (2) Every notice shall take effect on a date specified in it.
- (3) When the notice takes effect, all bank notes or coins to which it applies shall cease to be legal tender; but the Bank shall continue to be liable to pay any such bank note or coin on presentation at the head office of the Bank.
- (4) The Bank shall continue to be liable to pay any bank note issued before the commencement of this Act which has ceased to be legal tender before the commencement of this Act and which the Bank was, immediately before the commencement of this Act, liable to pay, on presentation at the head office of the Bank.
- (5) The Bank shall be liable to pay any coin issued by the Minister before the commencement of this Act which has ceased to be legal tender before the commencement of this Act, on presentation at the head office of the Bank.

Compare: 1964 No 27 s 12; 1964 No 134 s 22

27 Legal tender

- (1) Every bank note issued, or deemed to be issued, under this Act shall be a legal tender for the amount expressed in the note.
- (2) A tender of payment of money, to the extent that it is made in coins issued, or deemed to be issued, under this Act, shall be a legal tender,—
 - (a) in the case of coins of a denomination of \$10 or more, for the payment of any amount:
 - (b) in the case of coins of a denomination of \$1 or more but less than \$10, for the payment of any amount not exceeding \$100:
 - (c) in the case of coins of the denomination of 5 cents or more, but less than \$1, for the payment of an amount not exceeding \$5:
 - (d) in the case of any coins of the denomination of less than 5 cents, for the payment of an amount not exceeding 20 cents.
- (3) The references to coins and bank notes in subsections (1) and (2) do not include references to coins and bank notes that have been called in.

Compare: 1964 No 27 s 14; 1964 No 134 s 20(2)

28 Defacing bank notes

- (1) No person shall, without the prior consent of the Bank, wilfully deface, disfigure, or mutilate any bank note.
- (2) No person who is a party to the defacement, disfigurement, or mutilation of any bank note, shall—
 - (a) pay away; or

- (b) part with; or
 - (c) put in circulation; or
 - (d) demand payment of; or
 - (e) deposit or offer to deposit in any bank,—
that bank note.
- (3) Every person who contravenes subsection (1) or subsection (2) commits an offence against this Act and is liable on conviction to a fine not exceeding \$1,000.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 23

Section 28(3): amended, on 1 July 2013, by section 413 of the Criminal Procedure Act 2011 (2011 No 81).

29 Making or issuing of other bank notes or coins

- (1) No person shall make or issue any bank note or coin, other than a bank note or coin issued under this Act.
- (2) Every person who contravenes subsection (1) commits an offence against this Act and shall be liable on conviction,—
- (a) in the case of an individual, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 3 years or to a fine not exceeding \$100,000:
 - (b) in the case of a body corporate, to a fine not exceeding \$300,000.

Section 29(2): amended, on 1 July 2013, by section 413 of the Criminal Procedure Act 2011 (2011 No 81).

30 Reproduction or imitation of currency

- (1) No person shall, without the prior consent of the Bank,—
- (a) make, design, engrave, print, or reproduce; or
 - (b) use, issue, or publish—
any article or thing resembling a bank note or coin or so nearly resembling or having such a likeness to a bank note or coin as to be likely to be confused with or mistaken for it.
- (2) Every person who contravenes subsection (1) commits an offence against this Act.
- (3) Where a person is convicted of an offence against subsection (2), the court may order—
- (a) the article or thing:
 - (b) any copy of it:
 - (c) any plates, blocks, dies, and other instruments used or capable of being used for printing or reproducing it—

in the possession of that person to be destroyed.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 24(2); 1973 No 16 s 6

Other functions and powers

31 Bank to act as lender of last resort

The Bank shall, if the Bank considers it necessary for the purpose of maintaining the soundness of the financial system, act as lender of last resort for the financial system.

32 Bank may provide settlement account services

[Repealed]

Section 32: repealed, on 1 April 2019, by section 35 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

33 Policy advice

- (1) On request by the Minister, the Bank must provide advice to the Minister on any matter specified in the request that is connected with the functions of the Bank.

- (2) *[Repealed]*

- (3) The Bank may also provide advice to the Minister, at any time, on any matters or subjects within the responsibility of the Bank.

Section 33: replaced, on 10 September 2008, by section 9 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 59).

Section 33(2): repealed, on 1 April 2019, by section 35 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

34 Government banking business

[Repealed]

Section 34: repealed, on 1 April 2019, by section 35 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

35 Financial products registry services

[Repealed]

Section 35: repealed, on 1 April 2019, by section 35 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

36 Bank may require financial institution to supply information

- (1) For the purposes of enabling the Bank to carry out the functions and exercise the powers conferred on it by this Part, the Bank may, from time to time, by notice in writing to any financial institution, or by notice in the *Gazette* applying to any specified class of financial institutions, require the institution or, as the case may be, institutions of that class, to supply to the Bank such information and data relating to the business of the institution or institutions of that class for such periods, and in such form, as may be specified in the notice.
- (2) Without limiting subsection (1), a notice may require information and data to be supplied relating to the assets and liabilities, income and expenditure

(including interest rates charged and payable), fees and charges, obligations and commitments, and risk exposures of, and classes of transactions entered into by, that institution or class of institutions and any associated person and, where specified, in consolidated form, in respect of business carried on in New Zealand or elsewhere and whether as principal, broker, agent, or intermediary.

- (3) A notice given pursuant to this section may, by a subsequent notice, be revoked, varied, or amended by the Bank.
- (4) Information and data required to be supplied pursuant to this section shall be supplied to the Bank at such place in New Zealand and at such time as are specified in the notice.
- (5) A financial institution shall not be required to supply data or information under this section relating to the affairs of a particular customer or client.
- (6) Sections 156G to 156I and 156J(2)(c) and (d) (which relate to the publication or disclosure of information or data supplied to the Bank) apply with all necessary modifications in respect of information and data supplied to the Bank under this section as if for each reference to section 156C in sections 156G(1) and (3) and 156J(2)(c) there were substituted a reference to section 36.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38H(1), (2), (4)–(6); 1986 No 131 s 10

Section 36(6): inserted, on 10 September 2008, by section 10 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 59).

37 Failure to supply information

Every financial institution commits an offence against this Act if, without lawful justification or excuse, it—

- (a) fails to comply in any respect with any of the provisions of section 36 or of any requirements of the Bank under that section; or
- (b) supplies any information or data which it is required to supply under section 36 which is false or misleading in any material particular.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38H(7); 1986 No 131 s 10

38 Requirement that information be audited

- (1) Where the Bank believes that any information or data supplied by a financial institution pursuant to section 36 is, or may be, inadequate or inaccurate, it may, by notice in writing to that financial institution, require that information or data to be audited by an auditor approved by the Bank.
- (2) Every financial institution commits an offence against this Act if, without lawful justification or excuse, it fails to comply with a requirement under subsection (1).

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38H(3); 1986 No 131 s 10

39 Powers

Without limiting section 5 or any other provision of this Act, the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013, the Financial Market Infrastructures Act 2021, or the Insurance (Prudential Supervision) Act 2010, the Bank has power, whether in New Zealand or elsewhere, to—

- (a) carry on the business of banking:
- (b) issue financial products:
- (c) give a fixed or floating charge over all or any part of the undertaking or property of the Bank:
- (d) if the Bank ceases to carry out any function, make provision, whether or not it is in the Bank's interest to do so, for the benefit of employees of the Bank, or former employees, or their dependants:
- (e) enter into agreements or arrangements and obtain assurances necessary or desirable for carrying out its functions and exercising its powers:
- (f) carry on any business or exercise any powers, not inconsistent with any other function of the Bank, which can be conveniently carried on, or exercised in conjunction with its functions and the exercise of its powers.

Section 39: amended, on 11 May 2021, by section 162 of the Financial Market Infrastructures Act 2021 (2021 No 13).

Section 39: amended, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

Section 39: amended, on 8 September 2010, by section 241(1) of the Insurance (Prudential Supervision) Act 2010 (2010 No 111).

Section 39(b): amended, on 1 December 2014, by section 150 of the Financial Markets (Repeals and Amendments) Act 2013 (2013 No 70).

Part 3

Management of Reserve Bank

Governor and Deputy Governor

40 Governor

- (1) There shall be a Governor of the Bank who shall be appointed by the Minister on the recommendation of the Board.
- (2) The Governor shall be the Chief Executive of the Bank.

41 Duties of Governor

- (1) It is the duty of the Governor to ensure that the Bank carries out the functions imposed on it by—
 - (a) this Act; and

- (b) the Anti-Money Laundering and Countering Financing of Terrorism Act 2009; and
 - (c) the Insurance (Prudential Supervision) Act 2010; and
 - (d) the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013; and
 - (e) the Financial Market Infrastructures Act 2021.
- (1A) The office of Governor includes performing and exercising functions, powers, and duties as the chairperson and a member of the MPC (*see* clause 28 of Schedule 2 for the Governor's duties as chairperson).
- (2) The Governor has the authority, in the performance of those functions, to act in relation to all matters that are not required, by any Act referred to in subsection (1), to be dealt with by the Board or the MPC.

Section 41: replaced, on 8 September 2010, by section 241(1) of the Insurance (Prudential Supervision) Act 2010 (2010 No 111).

Section 41(1)(c): replaced, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

Section 41(1)(d): inserted, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

Section 41(1)(e): inserted, on 11 May 2021, by section 162 of the Financial Market Infrastructures Act 2021 (2021 No 13).

Section 41(1A): inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 11(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 41(2): replaced, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

Section 41(2): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 11(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

42 Conditions of appointment of Governor

- (1) The Governor must be appointed under section 40 for a term of 5 years and may be reappointed under that section for 1 further term of up to 5 years.
- (1A) *See* section 48(1) (which provides for a single term of up to 6 months for a Governor appointed under that section).
- (1B) If a person (A) who serves as the Governor under section 48 is subsequently appointed under section 40, the term of the appointment under section 48 does not reduce the length of A's term under subsection (1).
- (2) The conditions of appointment of the Governor, including remuneration, shall be—
- (a) determined by agreement between the Minister and the Governor after consultation with the Board; and
 - (b) tabled at the first Board meeting after they are agreed.
- (3) No condition of appointment shall have effect if it is inconsistent with the Bank's functions or limits or prevents the Governor from ensuring that those functions are carried out.

Section 42 heading: amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 12(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 42(1): replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 12(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 42(1A): inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 12(3) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 42(1B): inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 12(3) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 42(2): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 12(4) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 42(3): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 12(5) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

43 Deputy Governor

- (1) There is a Deputy Governor of the Bank who must be appointed by the Minister on the recommendation of the Board.
- (2) The Board must consult the Governor before making its recommendation.
- (3) The Deputy Governor must perform the duties and functions that are determined by the Governor (to the extent that those duties and functions are consistent with the conditions of appointment determined by the Board).

Section 43: replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 13 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

44 Term of appointment and conditions of appointment of Deputy Governor

- (1) The Deputy Governor must be appointed under section 43 for a term of 5 years and may be reappointed under that section for 1 further term of up to 5 years.
- (2) *See* section 48B(1) (which provides for a single term of up to 6 months for a Deputy Governor appointed under that section).
- (3) The conditions of appointment of the Deputy Governor must be determined by the Board after consulting the Minister.
- (4) The conditions must specify the grounds on which the Board may recommend that the Deputy Governor be removed from office under section 50(2)(b).

Section 44: replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 13 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

45 Extension of term of Governor or Deputy Governor

- (1) The Minister may extend—
 - (a) the Governor's term of appointment by up to 6 months by written notice to the Governor (with a copy to the Board);
 - (b) the Deputy Governor's term of appointment by up to 6 months by written notice to the Deputy Governor (with a copy to the Governor and the Board).

- (2) If the Governor's or Deputy Governor's term is extended and that person is reappointed for a further term in the same office, the length of the further term must be reduced by the length of the extension.
- (3) Subsection (2) does not prevent the further term from being extended under subsection (1).
- (4) The Minister must ensure that the following are notified in the *Gazette* as soon as practicable after an extension is made:
 - (a) the fact that the Governor's or Deputy Governor's term of appointment has been extended; and
 - (b) the period of the extension.
- (5) This section applies only to a Governor appointed under section 40 or a Deputy Governor appointed under section 43.

Section 45: replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 13 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

45A Validity of appointments

The appointment of a person as the Governor under section 40 or 48 or as the Deputy Governor under section 43 or 48B is not invalid only because a defect existed in the appointment of the person.

Section 45A: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 13 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

46 Disqualification of Governor and Deputy Governor

- (1) No person shall be appointed or reappointed, or continue to hold office, as Governor or Deputy Governor if that person—
 - (a) is a member of Parliament; or
 - (b) is a director or an employee of a registered bank or of a licensed NBDT as defined in the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 or of a licensed insurer or of a relevant operator of an FMI; or
 - (c) *[Repealed]*
 - (d) is a chief executive of a Government department or an employee of a Government department, appointed under the Public Service Act 2020; or
 - (e) is an undischarged bankrupt; or
 - (f) is a person who is convicted of any offence punishable by imprisonment for a term of 2 years or more; or
 - (g) is a person who is convicted of any offence punishable by imprisonment for a term of less than 2 years and is sentenced to imprisonment for that offence; or
 - (h) *[Repealed]*
 - (i) *[Repealed]*

- (j) is prohibited from being a director or promoter of, or being concerned or taking part in the management of, an incorporated or unincorporated body under the Companies Act 1993, or the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013, or the Takeovers Act 1993; or
- (k) is subject to a property order under the Protection of Personal and Property Rights Act 1988.
- (k) *[Repealed]*
- (1A) No person may be appointed or reappointed, or continue to hold office, as Deputy Governor, if that person is a member of the Board (except where the Deputy Governor is acting as the Governor).
- (2) The Governor or Deputy Governor shall be deemed to have resigned office if that person is prohibited from continuing to hold office under this section.
- (3) If the Governor or Deputy Governor becomes aware that he or she is likely to become disqualified, he or she must disclose that fact to the Board and the Minister as soon as practicable.
- (4) In subsection (1)(b), **relevant operator of an FMI**—
 - (a) means an operator of an FMI within the meaning of those terms in section 5 of the Financial Market Infrastructures Act 2021; but
 - (b) does not include an operator that is the Bank or a subsidiary of the Bank.

Section 46(1): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 14(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 46(1)(b): amended, on 11 May 2021, by section 162 of the Financial Market Infrastructures Act 2021 (2021 No 13).

Section 46(1)(b): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 14(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 46(1)(b): amended, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

Section 46(1)(b): amended, on 8 September 2010, by section 241(1) of the Insurance (Prudential Supervision) Act 2010 (2010 No 111).

Section 46(1)(c): repealed, on 1 April 2019, by section 35 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 46(1)(d): amended, on 7 August 2020, by section 135 of the Public Service Act 2020 (2020 No 40).

Section 46(1)(d): amended, on 25 January 2005, by section 19(1) of the State Sector Amendment Act (No 2) 2004 (2004 No 114).

Section 46(1)(e): replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 14(3) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 46(1)(h): repealed, on 5 December 2013, by section 14 of the Companies Amendment Act 2013 (2013 No 111).

Section 46(1)(i): repealed, on 25 October 2006, by section 25 of the Securities Amendment Act 2006 (2006 No 46).

Section 46(1)(j): replaced, on 25 October 2006, by section 25 of the Securities Amendment Act 2006 (2006 No 46).

Section 46(1)(j): amended, on 1 December 2014, by section 150 of the Financial Markets (Repeals and Amendments) Act 2013 (2013 No 70).

Section 46(1)(j): amended, on 10 September 2008, by section 15(2) of the Disability (United Nations Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities) Act 2008 (2008 No 64).

Section 46(1)(k): inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 14(4) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 46(1)(k): repealed, on 10 September 2008, by section 15(3) of the Disability (United Nations Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities) Act 2008 (2008 No 64).

Section 46(1A): inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 14(5) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 46(2): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 14(6) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 46(3): inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 14(7) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 46(4): inserted, on 11 May 2021, by section 162 of the Financial Market Infrastructures Act 2021 (2021 No 13).

47 Incapacity of Governor and Deputy Governor

- (1) In the case of the absence or incapacity of the Governor, the Deputy Governor shall have all the duties, responsibilities, and functions of the Governor under this Act and may exercise all the powers of the Governor under this Act, the Insurance (Prudential Supervision) Act 2010, the Financial Market Infrastructures Act 2021, or the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013.
- (2) In the case of the absence or incapacity of the Governor and the Deputy Governor, the Minister shall, on the recommendation of the Board, appoint—
 - (a) a director of the Bank; or
 - (b) an officer of the Bank—to act as Governor.
- (3) If the Minister is unable to make an appointment under subsection (2) by reason of the fact that, in the circumstances, it is impracticable for a meeting of the Board to be held, the Minister shall appoint—
 - (a) a director of the Bank; or
 - (b) an officer of the Bank—to act as Governor for a period not exceeding 28 days.
- (4) The person appointed to act as Governor shall, so long as the appointment continues, have all the duties, responsibilities, and functions of the Governor under this Act and may exercise all the powers of the Governor under this Act, the Insurance (Prudential Supervision) Act 2010, the Financial Market Infrastructures Act 2021, or the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013.
- (5) While any of the following persons is acting as Governor in accordance with this section, he or she must be taken to be a director of the Bank:
 - (a) the Deputy Governor:

- (b) a person appointed to act as Governor, but who is not a director of the Bank.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 18(2), (6), (7)

Section 47 heading: amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 15(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 47(1): amended, on 11 May 2021, by section 162 of the Financial Market Infrastructures Act 2021 (2021 No 13).

Section 47(1): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 15(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 47(1): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 15(3) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 47(1): amended, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

Section 47(2): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 15(3) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 47(4): amended, on 11 May 2021, by section 162 of the Financial Market Infrastructures Act 2021 (2021 No 13).

Section 47(4): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 15(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 47(4): amended, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

Section 47(5): replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 4 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 47(5)(a): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 15(3) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

48 Vacancy in office of Governor

- (1) If the office of Governor becomes vacant, the Minister must, on the recommendation of the Board, appoint any of the following as Governor for a period not exceeding 6 months:
 - (a) a director of the Bank:
 - (b) an officer of the Bank:
 - (c) any other person.
- (2) The circumstances in which the office becomes vacant include where 1 or more persons have been acting as Governor under section 47 for a total consecutive period of 3 months (unless the Minister gives a notice to the Bank that this subsection does not apply in the particular circumstances).
- (3) A Governor who has vacated office (for example, at the end of the Governor's term) may not be appointed under subsection (1).
- (4) If a Deputy Governor (**D**) is appointed under subsection (1), D's term as Deputy Governor—
 - (a) is suspended during the period in which D is the Governor; and
 - (b) is resumed at the end of that period (unless D is appointed as Governor under section 40); and

- (c) ends when that term would otherwise have ended under this Act.

Section 48: replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 16 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

48A Deputy Governor may act pending appointment

- (1) Pending the appointment of a person as Governor under section 48, the Deputy Governor must act as Governor for a period of 28 days or until a person is appointed under that section, whichever is less.
- (2) The Deputy Governor, so long as that person acts as Governor under this section,—
 - (a) has all the duties, responsibilities, and functions of the Governor under this Act and may exercise all the powers of the Governor under this Act; and
 - (b) must be treated as being a director of the Bank.

Section 48A: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 16 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

48B Vacancy in office of Deputy Governor

- (1) If the office of Deputy Governor becomes vacant, the Minister must, on the recommendation of the Board, appoint any person (other than a director of the Bank) as Deputy Governor for a period not exceeding 6 months.
- (2) The Deputy Governor who has vacated office (for example, at the end of the Deputy Governor's term) may not be appointed under subsection (1).

Section 48B: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 16 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

49 Removal of Governor from office

- (1) The Governor-General may, by Order in Council, on the advice of the Minister, remove the Governor from office.
- (2) The Minister may tender advice under subsection (1) if the Minister is satisfied—
 - (a) that the Bank is not adequately carrying out its functions (other than functions performed by the MPC); or
 - (b) that the Governor has not adequately discharged the responsibilities of office; or
 - (ba) that any of the matters set out in clause 19(2)(a) to (e) of Schedule 2 apply to the Governor as a member of the MPC; or
 - (c) that the Governor has obstructed, hindered, or prevented the Board or the MPC from discharging responsibilities under this Act (for example, by failing to give the Board or the MPC information that is necessary to discharge those responsibilities); or
 - (d) *[Repealed]*

- (e) *[Repealed]*
 - (f) *[Repealed]*
 - (g) that the resources of the Bank have not been properly or effectively managed; or
 - (h) that the Governor has, while holding office as Governor,—
 - (i) held any other office of profit; or
 - (ii) engaged in any other occupation for reward; or
 - (iii) had an ownership interest in a registered bank or a licensed NBDT as defined in the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 or a licensed insurer or a relevant operator of an FMI as defined in section 46(4); or
 - (iv) had an ownership interest in a bank carrying on business outside New Zealand; or
 - (i) that the Governor is unable to carry out the responsibilities of office, or has been guilty of serious neglect of duty, or has been guilty of misconduct.
- (3) The Minister may tender advice under this section whether or not the Board has made a recommendation under section 53(3) or (5) that the Governor be removed from office.

Section 49(2)(a): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 17(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 49(2)(ba): inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 17(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 49(2)(c): replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 17(3) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 49(2)(d): repealed, on 1 April 2019, by section 17(4) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 49(2)(e): repealed, on 1 April 2019, by section 17(4) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 49(2)(f): repealed, on 1 April 2019, by section 17(4) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 49(2)(h): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 17(5) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 49(2)(h)(iii): amended, on 11 May 2021, by section 162 of the Financial Market Infrastructures Act 2021 (2021 No 13).

Section 49(2)(h)(iii): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 17(6) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 49(2)(h)(iii): amended, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

Section 49(2)(h)(iii): amended, on 8 September 2010, by section 241(1) of the Insurance (Prudential Supervision) Act 2010 (2010 No 111).

Section 49(2)(h)(iv): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 17(6) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 49(2)(i): replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 17(7) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 49(3): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 17(8) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

50 Removal of Deputy Governor from office by Order in Council

- (1) The Governor-General may, by Order in Council, on the advice of the Minister, remove the Deputy Governor from office.
- (2) The Minister may tender advice under subsection (1) if the Minister is satisfied that—
 - (a) *[Repealed]*
 - (a) the Deputy Governor has not adequately discharged the responsibilities of office; or
 - (b) the Board has recommended the removal on 1 or more of the grounds specified in the Deputy Governor's conditions of appointment under section 44(4); or
 - (c) the Deputy Governor has obstructed, hindered, or prevented the Governor, the MPC, or the Board from discharging responsibilities under this Act; or
 - (ca) any of the matters set out in clause 19(2)(a) to (e) of Schedule 2 apply to the Deputy Governor as a member of the MPC; or
 - (d) the Deputy Governor has, while holding office as Deputy Governor,—
 - (i) held any other office of profit; or
 - (ii) engaged in any other occupation for reward; or
 - (iii) had an ownership interest in a registered bank or a licensed NBDT as defined in the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 or a licensed insurer or a relevant operator of an FMI as defined in section 46(4); or
 - (iv) had an ownership interest in a bank carrying on business outside New Zealand.
 - (e) the Deputy Governor is unable to carry out the responsibilities of office, or has been guilty of serious neglect of duty, or has been guilty of misconduct.
- (3) The Minister may tender advice under this section whether or not the Board has made a recommendation under section 53(4) or (5) that the Deputy Governor be removed from office (except that a recommendation is required under subsection (2)(b)).

Section 50(1): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 18(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 50(2): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 18(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 50(2)(a): repealed, on 21 August 2003, by section 5 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 50(2)(a): inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 18(3) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 50(2)(b): replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 18(3) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 50(2)(c): replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 18(4) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 50(2)(ca): inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 18(5) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 50(2)(d): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 18(6) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 50(2)(d)(iii): amended, on 11 May 2021, by section 162 of the Financial Market Infrastructures Act 2021 (2021 No 13).

Section 50(2)(d)(iii): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 18(7) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 50(2)(d)(iii): amended, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

Section 50(2)(d)(iii): amended, on 8 September 2010, by section 241(1) of the Insurance (Prudential Supervision) Act 2010 (2010 No 111).

Section 50(2)(d)(iv): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 18(7) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 50(2)(e): inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 18(8) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 50(3): replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 18(9) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

51 Delegation

- (1) The Governor may, at any time, delegate to the Deputy Governor any of the Governor's functions and powers including the power of delegation under subsection (2).
- (2) The Governor may, at any time, delegate any of the Governor's functions and powers to any other officer of the Bank.
- (3) The fact that the Deputy Governor exercises any powers or functions of the Governor shall be conclusive proof of the authority to do so, and no person shall be concerned to inquire whether the occasion for doing so has arisen or has ceased.
- (4) Any other officer of the Bank who purports to act pursuant to any delegation under this section shall, in the absence of proof to the contrary, be presumed to be acting in accordance with the terms of the delegation.
- (5) Subject to any general or special directions given or conditions attached by the Governor, any person to whom any powers or functions are delegated under this section may exercise them in the same manner and with the same effect as if they had been conferred directly by this Act or under any of the following Acts, and not by delegation:

- (a) the Anti-Money Laundering and Countering Financing of Terrorism Act 2009:
 - (b) the Insurance (Prudential Supervision) Act 2010:
 - (c) the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013:
 - (d) the Financial Market Infrastructures Act 2021.
- (6) A delegation under this section may be revoked at any time.
- (7) A delegation of any power or function under this section shall not prevent the exercise of the power or function by the Governor.
- (8) Any such delegation, until it is revoked, shall continue in force according to its tenor, notwithstanding that the Governor who made it may have ceased to hold office.
- (9) To avoid doubt, the Governor's functions and powers include his or her functions and powers under the following Acts:
- (a) the Anti-Money Laundering and Countering Financing of Terrorism Act 2009:
 - (b) the Insurance (Prudential Supervision) Act 2010:
 - (c) the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013:
 - (d) the Financial Market Infrastructures Act 2021.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 18(3), (4)

Section 51(1): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 19(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 51(2): replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 19(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 51(3): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 19(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 51(4): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 19(3) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 51(5): replaced, on 8 September 2010, by section 241(1) of the Insurance (Prudential Supervision) Act 2010 (2010 No 111).

Section 51(5): amended, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

Section 51(5)(c): inserted, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

Section 51(5)(d): inserted, on 11 May 2021, by section 162 of the Financial Market Infrastructures Act 2021 (2021 No 13).

Section 51(9): replaced, on 8 September 2010, by section 241(1) of the Insurance (Prudential Supervision) Act 2010 (2010 No 111).

Section 51(9)(c): inserted, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

Section 51(9)(d): inserted, on 11 May 2021, by section 162 of the Financial Market Infrastructures Act 2021 (2021 No 13).

Board of directors

52 Board of directors

There shall be a board of directors of the Bank.

53 Duties of Board

- (1) Subject to this Act, the Board of the Bank shall—
 - (a) keep under constant review the performance of the Bank in carrying out—
 - (i) its functions under sections 8 and 9 (or under an Order in Council under section 12); and
 - (ii) its functions relating to promoting the maintenance of a sound and efficient financial system; and
 - (iii) its other functions under this Act or any other enactment:
 - (b) keep under constant review the performance of the Governor in discharging the responsibilities of that office:
 - (c) keep under constant review the performance of the Deputy Governor in discharging the responsibilities of that office:
 - (d) keep under constant review the performance of the MPC, and each member of the MPC, in discharging responsibilities under this Act:
 - (e) keep under constant review the use of the Bank's resources.
- (2) The Board may give advice to the Governor on any matter relating to the performance of the Bank's functions and the exercise of its powers.
- (3) If the Board is satisfied—
 - (a) that the Bank is not adequately carrying out its functions (other than functions performed by the MPC); or
 - (b) that the Governor has not adequately discharged the responsibilities of that office; or
 - (c) that the Governor has obstructed, hindered, or prevented the Board or the MPC from discharging responsibilities under this Act (for example, by failing to give the Board or the MPC information that is necessary to discharge those responsibilities); or
 - (d) *[Repealed]*
 - (e) that the resources of the Bank have not been properly or effectively managed; or
 - (f) that the Governor has, while holding office as Governor,—
 - (i) held any other office of profit; or
 - (ii) engaged in any other occupation for reward; or

- (iii) had an ownership interest in a registered bank or a licensed NBDT as defined in the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 or a licensed insurer or a relevant operator of an FMI as defined in section 46(4); or
 - (iv) had an ownership interest in a bank carrying on business outside New Zealand; or
 - (g) that the Governor is unable to carry out the responsibilities of office, or has been guilty of serious neglect of duty, or has been guilty of misconduct,—
- the Board shall advise the Minister in writing and may recommend to the Minister that the Governor be removed from office.
- (4) The Board must advise the Minister in writing and may recommend to the Minister that the Deputy Governor be removed from office if the Board is satisfied—
- (a) that the Deputy Governor has not adequately discharged the responsibilities of that office; or
 - (b) that 1 or more of the grounds specified in the Deputy Governor's conditions of appointment under section 44(4) apply; or
 - (c) that the Deputy Governor has obstructed, hindered, or prevented the Governor, the MPC, or the Board from discharging responsibilities under this Act; or
 - (d) that the Deputy Governor has, while holding office as Deputy Governor,—
 - (i) held any other office of profit; or
 - (ii) engaged in any other occupation for reward; or
 - (iii) had an ownership interest in a registered bank or a licensed NBDT as defined in the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 or a licensed insurer or a relevant operator of an FMI as defined in section 46(4); or
 - (iv) had an ownership interest in a bank carrying on business outside New Zealand; or
 - (e) that the Deputy Governor is unable to carry out the responsibilities of office, or has been guilty of serious neglect of duty, or has been guilty of misconduct.
- (5) The Board must advise the Minister in writing, and may recommend that the Governor, Deputy Governor, or any other member of the MPC be removed from office, if the Board is satisfied of any matter referred to in clause 19(2)(a) to (e) of Schedule 2.
- (6) The Board may act under subsections (3) to (5) with as little formality and technicality, and as much expedition, as is permitted by—

- (a) the principles of natural justice; and
- (b) a proper consideration of the matter.

Section 53(1)(a): replaced, on 10 September 2008, by section 14(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 59).

Section 53(1)(a)(i): replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 20(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 53(1)(c): replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 20(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 53(1)(d): replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 20(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 53(3)(a): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 20(3) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 53(3)(c): replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 20(4) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 53(3)(d): repealed, on 1 April 2019, by section 20(4) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 53(3)(f): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 20(5) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 53(3)(f)(iii): amended, on 11 May 2021, by section 162 of the Financial Market Infrastructures Act 2021 (2021 No 13).

Section 53(3)(f)(iii): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 20(6) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 53(3)(f)(iii): amended, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

Section 53(3)(f)(iii): amended, on 8 September 2010, by section 241(1) of the Insurance (Prudential Supervision) Act 2010 (2010 No 111).

Section 53(3)(f)(iv): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 20(6) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 53(4): inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 20(7) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 53(4)(d)(iii): amended, on 11 May 2021, by section 162 of the Financial Market Infrastructures Act 2021 (2021 No 13).

Section 53(5): inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 20(7) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 53(6): inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 20(7) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

53A Board must prepare annual report

- (1) The Board must prepare, for each financial year, a report setting out the Board's assessment of the matters referred to in section 53(1).
- (1A) The report must—
 - (a) include a statement as to whether, in the Board's opinion, the MPC, the Governor, the Deputy Governor, and the other members of the MPC have adequately discharged their respective responsibilities during the financial year; and
 - (b) describe how the Board has assessed the matter under paragraph (a).

- (1B) The statement must address (without limitation) whether, in the Board's opinion, the MPC has formulated monetary policy consistent with the operational objectives set out in a remit over the financial year.
- (2) The report must—
- (a) be signed by the chairperson and 1 other non-executive director; and
 - (b) be delivered to the Minister within 3 months after the end of the financial year.
- (3) The report stands referred, by virtue of this section, to the House of Representatives.

Section 53A: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 53A(1A): inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 21 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 53A(1B): inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 21 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 53A(3): replaced, on 25 January 2005, by section 37(1) of the Public Finance Amendment Act 2004 (2004 No 113).

53B Board must supply reports or other information to Minister

- (1) The Board must supply to the Minister any reports or other information relating to the performance of its duties that the Minister requests.
- (2) The reports or information must be supplied at the time and in the manner reasonably required by the Minister.

Section 53B: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 22 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

53C Bank must supply reports or information to Board

- (1) The Bank must supply to the Board any reports or other information requested by the Board that is reasonably necessary to facilitate the performance of the Board's duties.
- (2) The reports or information must be supplied at the time and in the manner reasonably required by the Board.

Section 53C: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 22 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

54 Membership of Board

- (1) The Board must consist of—
- (a) not less than 5, and not more than 7, non-executive directors appointed by the Minister; and
 - (b) the Governor.
- (2) The appointment of every non-executive director must be notified in the *Gazette*.

- (3) The Governor is the only person employed in the service of the Bank who may be a director of the Bank.
- (4) The validity of any act of the Board is not affected by—
 - (a) any vacancy in its membership; or
 - (b) any defect in the appointment of a director; or
 - (c) the fact that any non-executive director is disqualified from appointment under section 58.
- (5) Subsection (3) is subject to sections 47 and 48A.

Section 54: replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 7 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 54(5): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 23 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

55 Term of office of non-executive directors

- (1) Except as provided in subsection (2) and in sections 57 to 59, every non-executive director shall hold office for a term of 5 years.
- (2) *[Repealed]*
- (3) A non-executive director may from time to time be reappointed.
- (4) A non-executive director may at any time resign office by notice in writing to the Minister.

Section 55(2): repealed, on 1 April 2019, by section 35 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

56 Considerations affecting appointment of non-executive directors

In considering the appointment or reappointment of a person to the office of non-executive director of the Bank, the Minister shall have regard, in relation to that office, to—

- (a) that person's knowledge, skill, and experience; and
- (b) the likelihood of any conflict between the interests of the Bank and any interests which that person has or represents.

57 Extraordinary vacancies

- (1) If a non-executive director dies, or resigns or is removed from office, that office shall become vacant and the vacancy shall be deemed to be an extraordinary vacancy.
- (2) A non-executive director shall be deemed to have resigned office if that director—
 - (a) is prohibited by section 58 from holding office as a director; or
 - (b) fails, without the Board's consent, to attend 3 consecutive meetings of the Board.

- (3) The manner of filling an extraordinary vacancy shall be the manner prescribed by section 54.
- (4) A person who is appointed to fill an extraordinary vacancy shall be appointed for the residue of the term of the vacating director.

58 Disqualification of non-executive directors

No person may be appointed or reappointed, or continue to hold, the office of non-executive director of the Bank if that person—

- (a) is a member of Parliament; or
- (b) is a director or an employee of a registered bank or a licensed insurer or a licensed NBDT (as defined in the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013) or a relevant operator of an FMI (as defined in section 46(4)); or
- (c) is a member of the MPC; or
- (ca) is subject to a property order under the Protection of Personal and Property Rights Act 1988; or
- (cb) is an undischarged bankrupt; or
- (d) is a person who is convicted of any offence punishable by imprisonment for a term of 2 years or more; or
- (e) is a person who is convicted of any offence punishable by imprisonment for a term of less than 2 years and is sentenced to imprisonment for that offence; or
- (f) *[Repealed]*
- (g) *[Repealed]*
- (h) is prohibited from being a director or promoter of, or being concerned or taking part in the management of, an incorporated or unincorporated body under the Companies Act 1993, or the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013, or the Takeovers Act 1993.
- (i) *[Repealed]*

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 5; 1986 No 131 s 5

Section 58: amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 24(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 58(b): amended, on 11 May 2021, by section 162 of the Financial Market Infrastructures Act 2021 (2021 No 13).

Section 58(b): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 24(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 58(b): amended, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

Section 58(b): amended, on 8 September 2010, by section 241(1) of the Insurance (Prudential Supervision) Act 2010 (2010 No 111).

Section 58(c): replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 24(3) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 58(ca): inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 24(3) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 58(cb): inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 24(3) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 58(f): repealed, on 5 December 2013, by section 14 of the Companies Amendment Act 2013 (2013 No 111).

Section 58(g): repealed, on 25 October 2006, by section 25 of the Securities Amendment Act 2006 (2006 No 46).

Section 58(h): replaced, on 25 October 2006, by section 25 of the Securities Amendment Act 2006 (2006 No 46).

Section 58(h): amended, on 1 December 2014, by section 150 of the Financial Markets (Repeals and Amendments) Act 2013 (2013 No 70).

Section 58(i): repealed, on 10 September 2008, by section 15(4) of the Disability (United Nations Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities) Act 2008 (2008 No 64).

59 Removal from office of non-executive directors

- (1) The Governor-General may, by Order in Council, on the advice of the Minister, remove a non-executive director of the Bank from office.
- (2) The Minister may tender advice under subsection (1) if the Minister is satisfied that the director—
 - (a) is unable, or has failed, to perform the duties of a director of the Bank under this Act; or
 - (b) has been guilty of misconduct; or
 - (c) has obstructed, hindered, or prevented—
 - (i) the Governor from discharging the responsibilities of the Governor under this Act; or
 - (ii) the MPC from discharging the responsibilities of the MPC under this Act.

Section 59(2)(c): replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 25 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

59A Chairperson and deputy chairperson of Board

- (1) The Minister must appoint—
 - (a) a non-executive director of the Bank to be chairperson of the Board; and
 - (b) another non-executive director of the Bank to be deputy chairperson of the Board.
- (2) A chairperson or deputy chairperson holds that office for a term determined by the Minister unless that person—
 - (a) resigns from that office; or
 - (b) is removed from that office, at any time, by the Minister; or
 - (c) ceases to be a non-executive director.
- (3) A chairperson or deputy chairperson whose term of office has expired—

- (a) is eligible for reappointment so long as that person continues to be a non-executive director; and
 - (b) continues to hold that office until a successor is appointed.
- (4) A vacancy in the office of chairperson or deputy chairperson must be filled as soon as practicable in the manner set out in subsection (1).

Section 59A: replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 26 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

60 Meetings of Board

- (1) The Board may meet as often as necessary, but must meet at least 6 times each financial year.
- (2) The chairperson, or any 2 directors, may, at any time, call a meeting of the Board.
- (3) At any meeting of the Board, the quorum necessary for the transaction of business is 4 directors.
- (4) All questions arising at any meeting of the Board that cannot be resolved by consensus must be decided by a majority of the votes cast by the directors present.
- (5) If a vote is tied, the following has a casting vote:
 - (a) the chairperson:
 - (b) the deputy chairperson or other director presiding at the meeting in accordance with section 60C.
- (6) Subject to this Act, the Board may regulate its own procedure.

Section 60: replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 9 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 60(5): replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 27 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

60A Teleconference meeting

A resolution is as valid and effectual as if it had been passed at a meeting of the Board duly called and constituted if—

- (a) a telephone or video conference of at least 4 directors is held; and
- (b) notice of the conference has been given under section 60B and all reasonable efforts have been made to enable every director to participate in the conference; and
- (c) each director who participates in the conference is able to individually express his or her views, and vote, on any question arising during the meeting; and
- (d) the resolution is assented to by a majority of the directors participating in the conference.

Section 60A: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 9 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

60B Directors to be notified of meetings

- (1) The person or persons calling a meeting must ensure that each director is given—
 - (a) at least 2 days' notice of a meeting; or
 - (b) if a meeting is to be convened as a matter of urgency, reasonable notice of the meeting.
- (2) The notice must—
 - (a) indicate the business to be transacted at the meeting; and
 - (b) be given in writing or, if the director to whom the notice is to be given agrees, orally.
- (3) A notice in writing may be given by personal delivery, by post, or by electronic transmission (for example, by fax or email).
- (4) At a meeting of the Board, any director may, with the leave of the chairperson or the majority of the directors present, raise any matter for the consideration of the Board, even though that matter has not been included in the notice of meeting under subsection (2)(a).
- (5) For the purposes of subsection (1), it is enough if the person or persons calling a meeting made all reasonable efforts to ensure each director was given the notice by the time required under that subsection.

Section 60B: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 9 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

60C Who presides at meetings of Board

- (1) At all meetings of the Board, the chairperson presides if he or she is present and willing to do so.
- (2) The deputy chairperson must be the chairperson for the meeting if—
 - (a) the chairperson is not present; or
 - (b) there is no chairperson; or
 - (c) the chairperson is present, but is unwilling or unable to preside.
- (3) Despite subsection (2), another non-executive director appointed by the other non-executive directors must be the chairperson for the meeting instead of the deputy chairperson if—
 - (a) the deputy chairperson is not present; or
 - (b) there is no deputy chairperson; or
 - (c) the deputy chairperson is present, but is unwilling or unable to preside.

- (4) The deputy chairperson or that non-executive director has and may exercise and perform all the powers, duties, and functions of the chairperson for the purposes of that meeting.

Section 60C: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 9 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 60C(2): replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 28 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 60C(3): replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 28 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 60C(4): inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 28 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

61 Directors to disclose interests

- (1) A director who is interested in a contract or proposed contract with the Bank, or in the exercise or proposed exercise by the Bank of a power, shall declare that interest at every meeting of the Board at which that contract or proposed contract, or the exercise or proposed exercise of the power, is considered by the Board.
- (2) A director who is interested in a contract or proposed contract or in the exercise or proposed exercise of a power—
- (a) is not entitled to vote on a resolution that relates to the contract or proposed contract or the exercise or proposed exercise of the power:
 - (b) shall not be counted for the purpose of determining whether a quorum is present when—
 - (i) the contract or proposed contract or the exercise or proposed exercise of the power is considered by the Board; or
 - (ii) a resolution relating to the contract or proposed contract or the exercise or proposed exercise of the power is voted on.

Section 61(2): replaced, on 8 August 1990, by section 3 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1990 (1990 No 96).

62 Committees

- (1) The Board may, from time to time, appoint committees of 1 or more directors and may delegate any of its functions and powers, except this power of delegation, to such committees.
- (2) The Board may from time to time—
- (a) discharge, alter, or reconstitute a committee; or
 - (b) discharge a member of a committee and appoint another member in that member's place.
- (3) Subject to any direction given by the Board, the functions and powers delegated to a committee may be performed or exercised with the same effect as if they had been conferred by this Act and not by delegation.

- (4) A committee purporting to act under delegation shall, in the absence of proof to the contrary, be presumed to be acting in accordance with the delegation.
- (5) A delegation may be revoked by the Board at any time.
- (6) A delegation does not prevent the Board from performing or exercising its functions and powers.
- (7) A delegation to a committee shall continue in force even though the membership of the Board or the committee changes.
- (8) Subject to this Act and to any directions given by the Board, a committee may regulate its own procedure.

63 Fees and expenses of non-executive directors

- (1) The Bank shall pay the non-executive directors such fees as the Minister, after considering any recommendation by the Board, determines.
- (2) The Bank shall pay the non-executive directors travelling and other expenses incurred in carrying out their duties.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 15; 1980 No 138 s 2(1)

Monetary policy committee

Heading: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 29 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

63A Establishment of monetary policy committee

- (1) The monetary policy committee (**MPC**) is established.
- (2) The MPC is a committee of the Bank.

Section 63A: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 29 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

63B Functions of MPC

The MPC must—

- (a) perform the function of formulating monetary policy in accordance with this Act; and
- (b) perform or exercise any other function, power, or duty conferred on it under this Act.

Section 63B: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 29 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

63C Membership of MPC

- (1) The MPC must have not fewer than 5 members and not more than 7 members.
- (2) The members must comprise—
 - (a) the Governor:
 - (b) the Deputy Governor:

- (c) 1 or 2 persons who are employees or officers of the Bank (the **internal members**):
 - (d) 2 or 3 persons who are not employees or officers of the Bank (the **external members**).
- (3) The internal members, together with the Governor and the Deputy Governor, must be a majority of the membership of the MPC (subject to any vacancies in the membership).

Section 63C: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 29 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

63D Charter

- (1) A charter must be in force under this Act (*see* clauses 5 to 7 of Schedule 1 and section 63F).
- (2) The purpose of the charter is to provide for the following to the extent that those matters are not otherwise provided for in this Act:
- (a) requirements to promote transparency and accountability in connection with the performance of the MPC's functions; and
 - (b) decision-making procedures.

Section 63D: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 29 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

63E Content of charter

- (1) The charter must include the following:
- (a) requirements for summary records of the MPC's meetings under clause 46 of Schedule 2 (including the content of the records, when and how those records must be published, and matters relating to the record of votes); and
 - (b) guidelines or requirements relating to the publication or disclosure by a member of the MPC of any matter relating to the MPC or its functions, powers, or duties.
- (2) The charter may also include—
- (a) requirements relating to other information that must or may be published by or on behalf of the MPC, including when and how that information must or may be published; and
 - (b) decision-making procedures; and
 - (c) any other matters that—
 - (i) this Act provides are to be or may be dealt with by the charter; or
 - (ii) are otherwise for the purpose set out in section 63D.
- (3) The charter must not be inconsistent with anything in this Act.

Section 63E: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 29 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

63F Replacement charter

- (1) The Minister and the MPC may agree to issue a replacement charter at any time.
- (2) The Minister and the MPC must consider whether it is necessary or desirable to issue a replacement charter when a new remit is to be issued by the Minister.
- (3) If a report is provided under section 63G, the Minister and the MPC must have regard to the report.
- (4) A replacement charter takes effect on and from—
 - (a) the date on which it is issued; or
 - (b) a later date specified in the charter.
- (5) Until a replacement charter is issued, the existing charter continues in force.

Section 63F: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 29 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

63G Consultation about replacement charter

- (1) This section applies if the Bank is required to act under clauses 2 and 3 of Schedule 2 (which relate to the Bank giving remit advice).
- (2) The Bank must, before remit advice is given under clause 2 of Schedule 2, seek the views of members of the public on the matters that the Bank considers would assist the Minister and the MPC when considering—
 - (a) whether it is necessary or desirable to issue a replacement charter; and
 - (b) the content of a replacement charter (if any).
- (3) The Governor must, when the remit advice is given under clause 2 of Schedule 2, give the Minister and the MPC a report that summarises the comments that are provided by those members of the public within the time and in the manner specified by the Bank.
- (4) The Bank must, as soon as practicable after the remit is issued, publish a copy of the report on an Internet site maintained by, or on behalf of, the Bank.

Section 63G: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 29 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

63H Publication of charter

The charter must be published on an Internet site maintained by, or on behalf of, the Bank.

Section 63H: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 29 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

63I Status of charter

[Repealed]

Section 63I: repealed, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

63J Code of conduct

- (1) A code of conduct for the members of the MPC must be approved by the Board.
- (2) The Board must ensure that a code is in force at all times.
- (3) The code may be amended or replaced at any time with the approval of the Board, but the Board may give its approval only if it is satisfied that the code (as amended or replaced) adequately addresses the matters in section 63K.
- (4) The code (or the code as amended or replaced) comes into force on—
 - (a) the date on which the Board gives its approval; or
 - (b) a later date specified by the Board in the resolution that gives its approval.

Section 63J: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 29 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

63K Content of code

- (1) The code must provide for minimum standards of conduct that must be demonstrated when acting as a member of the MPC, including—
 - (a) rules for managing and avoiding conflicts of interest; and
 - (b) rules for maintaining the confidentiality of information; and
 - (c) rules to promote active participation and preparation; and
 - (d) any other minimum standards of ethical behaviour.
- (2) The rules about conflicts of interest may provide for the disclosure of interests, including—
 - (a) defining the nature of interests to be disclosed; and
 - (b) providing for what must be disclosed, to whom disclosure is made, and how disclosures of interests must be made; and
 - (c) providing for the consequences of non-disclosure; and
 - (d) regulating or prohibiting participation of an interested member in decision making; and
 - (e) providing for the establishment and maintenance of an interests register.
- (3) The code must not be inconsistent with anything in this Act or the charter.

Section 63K: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 29 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

63L Publication and status of code

- (1) The code of conduct must be published on an Internet site maintained by, or on behalf of, the Bank.
- (2) *[Repealed]*

Section 63L: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 29 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 63L(2): repealed, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

63M Other matters

The provisions set out in Part 2 of Schedule 2 regulate other matters relating to the MPC and its members.

Section 63M: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 29 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Appointment procedure

Heading: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 29 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

63N Appointment procedure

- (1) This section applies to the appointment of any of the following:
 - (a) the Governor;
 - (b) the Deputy Governor;
 - (c) an internal or external member of the MPC.
- (2) The appointment of the person must be made by written notice to the appointee (with a copy to the Board and, except in the case of subsection (1)(a), to the Governor).
- (3) The notice must state—
 - (a) the date on which the appointment takes effect, which must not be earlier than the date on which the notice is received; and
 - (b) the term of the appointment; and
 - (c) the conditions of appointment.
- (4) The Minister must ensure that the following are notified in the *Gazette* as soon as practicable after an appointment is made:
 - (a) the name of the appointee; and
 - (b) the date on which the appointment takes effect; and
 - (c) the term of the appointment.

Section 63N: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 29 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Part 4

Use of words ‘bank’, ‘banker’, and ‘banking’

Part 4: replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 10 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Limit on use of restricted words in name or title

Heading: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 10 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

64 Limit on use of restricted words in name or title

- (1) No person may—
 - (a) be formed, incorporated, or registered using a name or title that includes a restricted word; or
 - (b) change a person’s name or title to a name or title that includes a restricted word; or
 - (c) carry on any activity directly or indirectly in New Zealand (whether through an agent or otherwise) using a name or title that includes a restricted word.
- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply to—
 - (a) the Bank; or
 - (b) a registered bank; or
 - (c) any person who is authorised by the Bank under section 65 to use a name or title that includes a restricted word but only to the extent that the person is acting within the scope of that authorisation; or
 - (d) any person who is exempted under section 66 but only to the extent that the person is acting within the scope of that exemption.
- (3) Despite subsection (2)(b), a registered bank must not use, without an authorisation from the Bank under section 65(1)(e), a name or title that includes a restricted word in respect of a managed investment scheme of which the registered bank is a supervisor or a manager within the meaning of section 6(1) of the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013.
- (4) Subsection (2)(b) does not extend to a person carrying on any activity by means of, or through the agency of, a registered bank.
- (5) A person commits an offence if the person contravenes this section.
- (6) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 66M.
- (7) In this section (except subsection (1)(a) to (c)) and sections 65 and 66, **use**, in relation to a restricted word, means act in a manner prohibited by subsection (1)(a) to (c) (as the context requires).

Section 64: replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 10 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 64(3): amended, on 1 December 2014, by section 150 of the Financial Markets (Repeals and Amendments) Act 2013 (2013 No 70).

65 Bank may authorise use of restricted words in name or title

- (1) The Bank may authorise any of the following persons to use a name or title that includes a restricted word:
 - (a) a person licensed or registered as a bank in a country other than New Zealand;
 - (b) a class of persons licensed or registered as banks in a country other than New Zealand;
 - (c) a person that is formed, incorporated, or registered to represent the interests of—
 - (i) any registered bank; or
 - (ii) any person connected with a registered bank;
 - (d) an associated person of a registered bank;
 - (e) a registered bank or an associated person of a registered bank that intends to use a name or title that includes a restricted word in respect of a managed investment scheme of which the registered bank or the associated person is a supervisor or a manager within the meaning of section 6(1) of the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013;
 - (f) a person that is not a financial institution.
- (2) In the case of an authorisation under subsection (1)(a), the Bank must—
 - (a) give the authorisation by notice in writing to the person; and
 - (b) impose both of the following conditions:
 - (i) the condition that the person use a particular name or title approved by the Bank; and
 - (ii) the condition that the person carry on in New Zealand only those activities specified by the Bank in the notice.
- (3) In the case of an authorisation under subsection (1)(b),—
 - (a) the authorisation is secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements); and
 - (b) the Bank must impose the condition that each member of the class of persons carries on in New Zealand only those activities specified by the Bank in the authorisation in respect of the class to which that member belongs.
- (4) In the case of an authorisation under subsection (1)(c) to (f), the Bank must—
 - (a) give the authorisation by notice in writing to the person; and

- (b) impose the condition that the person uses a particular name or title approved by the Bank.
- (5) Nothing in subsections (2) to (4) prevents the Bank from imposing any other conditions to the authorisation that it thinks fit.
- (6) The Bank may, at any time, revoke an authorisation, or vary or remove a condition of an authorisation, or add a condition of an authorisation, by,—
 - (a) in the case of an authorisation that relates to a person, notice in writing to the person; or
 - (b) in the case of an authorisation that relates to a class of persons, notice in the *Gazette*.
- (7) Any authorisation given under this section applies to any other person (for example, the Registrar of Companies), but only to the extent that the acts of that person are necessary to allow the person to whom the authorisation is given to have the benefit of that authorisation.

Legislation Act 2019 requirements for secondary legislation made under this section

Publication	The maker must publish it in the <i>Gazette</i>	LA19 ss 73, 74(1)(a), Sch 1 cl 14
Presentation	It is not required to be presented to the House of Representatives because a transitional exemption applies under Schedule 1 of the Legislation Act 2019	LA19 s 114, Sch 1 cl 32(1)(a)
Disallowance	It may be disallowed by the House of Representatives	LA19 ss 115, 116

This note is not part of the Act.

Section 65: replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 10 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 65(1)(e): amended, on 1 December 2014, by section 150 of the Financial Markets (Repeals and Amendments) Act 2013 (2013 No 70).

Section 65(3): replaced, on 28 October 2021, by regulation 107 of the Legislation Act (Amendments to Legislation) Regulations 2021 (LI 2021/247).

66 Certain persons exempt from application of section 64

Nothing in section 64(1) applies to a person using a name or title that includes a restricted word if—

- (a) the restricted word signifies a geographic place name or the name of a natural person; and
- (b) the name or title is not used in respect of a financial institution, or could not reasonably be mistaken for the name or title of a financial institution.

Section 66: replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 10 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

66A Application of Companies Act 1993

Nothing in sections 65 and 66 affects or limits the following sections of the Companies Act 1993:

- (a) sections 20 to 24 (which relate to company names):

- (b) section 333 (which relates to the reservation of the name of an overseas company).

Section 66A: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 10 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Limit on use of restricted words in advertisement

Heading: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 10 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

66B Limit on use of restricted words in advertisement

- (1) No specified person may use a restricted word in any advertisement unless the advertisement contains a statement that complies with subsection (2).
- (2) The statement must—
- (a) state that the specified person is not a registered bank; and
- (b) be communicated in a manner that ensures, as far as is reasonably practicable, that the statement attracts the attention of the persons to whom the advertisement is directed.
- (3) A specified person commits an offence if the specified person contravenes this section.
- (4) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 66M.
- (5) In this section and sections 66D and 66M,—

advertisement —

- (a) means any thing used to promote—
- (i) the interests of a specified person; or
- (ii) the services or products of that person; and
- (b) includes a trade mark of a specified person; but
- (c) does not include the name or title of a specified person

specified person means a person that—

- (a) is a financial institution; and
- (b) is not a registered bank.

Section 66B: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 10 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Powers of Bank in relation to use of restricted words

Heading: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 10 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

66C Power to obtain information

- (1) If the Bank believes or has reasonable grounds for believing that there has been a contravention of section 64 or section 66B, the Bank, for the purpose of

determining whether there has been a contravention of either of those sections, may, by notice in writing, require any person to—

- (a) produce to the Bank a document in the person's possession, custody, or control:
 - (b) supply the Bank with information or an explanation about any information.
- (2) The Bank may exercise the power in subsection (1) only if the Bank has reasonable cause to believe that the person may have information or documents relevant to the purpose of that subsection.
 - (3) A person to whom a notice is given must comply with the notice within the period of time specified by the Bank (which period must be reasonable in the circumstances).
 - (4) A person commits an offence if, without lawful justification or excuse, the person fails to comply with this section.
 - (5) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 66M.

Section 66C: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 10 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

66D Power to require change of name, etc

- (1) If the Bank is satisfied on reasonable grounds that a person has contravened, or is contravening, section 64 or section 66B, it may, by notice in writing, require that person to—
 - (a) change that person's name or title to a name or title that does not include a restricted word:
 - (b) cease using a restricted word in an advertisement:
 - (c) cease carrying on any activity using a name or title that includes a restricted word.
- (2) The Bank may require any person to whom a notice is given to supply the Bank with information or documents that may be necessary for the Bank to verify that the notice has been complied with.
- (3) A person must comply with a requirement of the Bank under this section within the period of time specified by the Bank (which period must be reasonable in the circumstances).
- (4) A person commits an offence if the person fails to comply with this section.
- (5) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 66M.

Section 66D: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 10 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

66E Power to appoint person to enter and search premises

- (1) This section applies if the Bank has reasonable cause to believe—

- (a) that any information or documents supplied to the Bank under section 66C or section 66D(2) are false or misleading in a material particular; or
 - (b) that a person has failed to comply with any requirement to supply information or documents under section 66C or section 66D(2).
- (2) If this section applies, the Bank may appoint, in writing, any suitably qualified person to enter and search any premises.
- (3) A person appointed under subsection (2) may—
 - (a) inspect, remove, and take copies of any documents relating to the use of a restricted word that may be in the possession, custody, or control of any person; and
 - (b) if necessary, require the reproduction in usable form of any information recorded or stored in those documents.
- (4) A person commits an offence if, without lawful justification or excuse, the person hinders, obstructs, or delays the conduct of any search by a person appointed under subsection (2).
- (5) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 66M.

Section 66E: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 10 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

66F Requirements on entering and searching premises

- (1) A person appointed under section 66E(2) must not enter and search any premises, or inspect, remove, or take copies of any documents in the possession, custody, or control of any person, or require the reproduction in usable form of any information recorded or stored in any documents, unless—
 - (a) the occupier of the premises, or the person who has possession, custody, or control of the documents, agrees; or
 - (b) the person appointed under section 66E(2) obtains a warrant under section 66I.
- (2) A person authorised to enter and search any premises under a warrant must, on first entering those premises and, if requested, at any subsequent time, produce—
 - (a) evidence of that person's authority to enter the premises; and
 - (b) evidence of that person's identity.

Section 66F: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 10 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

66G Confidentiality of information or documents

- (1) This section applies to information or documents supplied or disclosed to, or obtained by, the Bank for the purposes of, or in connection with, the exercise of powers conferred by this Part.

- (2) The Bank, any officer or employee of the Bank, or a person appointed under section 66E(2) must not publish or disclose any information or documents to which this section applies except—
- (a) with the consent of the person to whom the information relates or of the person to whom the information is confidential; or
 - (b) to the extent that the information is available to the public under any Act, including the Official Information Act 1982, or is otherwise publicly available; or
 - (c) for the purposes of, or in connection with, the exercise of powers conferred by this Part; or
 - (d) in connection with any investigation or inquiry (whether or not preliminary to any proceedings) in respect of, or any proceedings for, an offence against this Act or any other Act; or
 - (e) to any central bank, authority, or body in any other country that exercises functions that correspond with, or are similar to, those conferred on the Bank under this Act or under the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 for the purposes of the exercise by that central bank, authority, or body of those functions; or
 - (f) to any person who the Bank is satisfied has a proper interest in receiving the information.
- (3) The Bank, any officer or employee of the Bank, or a person appointed under section 66E(2) must not publish or disclose any information or documents under subsection (2)(e) or (f) unless the Bank is satisfied that satisfactory provision exists to protect the confidentiality of that information or those documents.
- (4) A person referred to in subsection (5) commits an offence if the person contravenes this section.
- (5) The persons are—
- (a) any officer or employee of the Bank; or
 - (b) a person appointed under section 66E(2).
- (6) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 66M.

Section 66G: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 10 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 66G(2)(e): amended, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

66H Limits on further disclosure of information or documents published or disclosed under section 66G

- (1) A person to whom any information or documents are published or disclosed under section 66G must not publish, disclose, or use that information or those documents unless the publication, disclosure, or use is,—

- (a) in the case of a publication or disclosure under section 66G(2)(a), in accordance with the terms and conditions of the consent referred to in that paragraph:
 - (b) in the case of a publication or disclosure under section 66G(2)(c),—
 - (i) for the purposes of, or in connection with, the exercise of powers conferred by this Part; and
 - (ii) in accordance with any conditions that the Bank may have imposed:
 - (c) in the case of a publication or disclosure under section 66G(2)(f),—
 - (i) authorised by the Bank and in accordance with any conditions that the Bank may have imposed; or
 - (ii) necessary or desirable for the performance of any function or exercise of any power conferred by any enactment.
- (2) A person commits an offence if the person contravenes this section.
- (3) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 66M.

Section 66H: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 10 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

66I Procedure for obtaining warrants

- (1) An issuing officer (within the meaning of section 3 of the Search and Surveillance Act 2012) may issue a warrant to a person appointed under section 66E(2) if the issuing officer is satisfied, on application made in the manner provided in subpart 3 of Part 4 of that Act, that there are reasonable grounds for believing —
- (a) that any information or documents supplied to the Bank under section 66C or section 66D(2) are false or misleading in a material particular; or
 - (b) that a person has failed to comply with any requirement to supply information or documents under section 66C or section 66D(2).
- (2) The provisions of Part 4 of the Search and Surveillance Act 2012 (except sections 118 and 119) apply.

Section 66I: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 10 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 66I(1): amended, on 1 October 2012, by section 297(1) of the Search and Surveillance Act 2012 (2012 No 24).

Section 66I(2): inserted, on 1 October 2012, by section 297(2) of the Search and Surveillance Act 2012 (2012 No 24).

66J Effect of warrant

[Repealed]

Section 66J: repealed, on 1 October 2012, by section 297(3) of the Search and Surveillance Act 2012 (2012 No 24).

66K Effect of proceedings

- (1) If any person commences any proceedings in any court in respect of the exercise of any powers conferred by section 66E, until a final decision in relation to those proceedings is given, the powers may be, or may continue to be, exercised as if the proceedings had not been commenced, and no person is excused from fulfilling any obligation under that section by reason of those proceedings.
- (2) This section applies despite the provisions of any other Act or any rule of law.

Section 66K: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 10 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

66L Effect of final decision that exercise of powers under section 66E unlawful

- (1) This section applies if—
 - (a) any power conferred by section 66E has been exercised; and
 - (b) that exercise has been declared to be unlawful in a final decision given in proceedings in respect of the exercise of that power.
- (2) The Bank must ensure that, as soon as practicable after the decision is given,—
 - (a) any information supplied by a person and any documents or records obtained as a result of the unlawful exercise of the power are returned to the person previously having possession, custody, or control of those documents or records, and any copies of those documents or records are destroyed;
 - (b) any documents or records derived from, or based on, the documents or records are destroyed.
- (3) No information, documents, or records obtained as a result of the unlawful exercise of the power are admissible in evidence in any proceedings.

Section 66L: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 10 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Penalty for offences against this Part

Heading: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 10 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

66M Penalty for offences

- (1) A person who commits an offence against any of the provisions listed in subsection (2) is liable, on conviction,—
 - (a) in the case of an individual, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 12 months or to a fine not exceeding \$100,000; and
 - (b) in the case of a body corporate, to a fine not exceeding \$1,000,000.
- (2) The provisions are—
 - (a) section 64 (which relates to the use of restricted words in a name or title);

- (b) section 66B (which relates to the use of restricted words in an advertisement):
- (c) section 66C (which relates to failing to produce a document or supply information to the Bank after being required to do so):
- (d) section 66D (which relates to failing to change a person's name or title or cease using a restricted word in an advertisement or cease carrying on any activity after being required to do so):
- (e) section 66E (which relates to obstructing a person appointed to conduct a search):
- (f) section 66G (which relates to breaches of confidentiality provisions):
- (g) section 66H (which relates to further disclosures of information).

Section 66M: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 10 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 66M(1): amended, on 1 July 2013, by section 413 of the Criminal Procedure Act 2011 (2011 No 81).

Part 5

Registration of banks and prudential supervision of registered banks

67A Interpretation in this Part

In this Part, unless the context otherwise requires,—

action that is likely to have a detrimental effect on financial system stability in Australia includes an action that prevents or interferes with any outsourcing arrangement

authorised deposit-taking institution has the same meaning as in section 5(1) of the Banking Act 1959 of the Parliament of the Commonwealth of Australia

outsourcing arrangement means an arrangement for business, or functions relating to any business, of an authorised deposit-taking institution to be carried on by a person other than that authorised deposit-taking institution

prescribed Australian financial authority means an Australian public authority prescribed by regulations made under section 68A.

Section 67A: inserted, on 15 December 2006, by section 5 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2006 (2006 No 51).

67 Registration and prudential supervision

The Bank shall in accordance with this Part—

- (a) register banks; and
- (b) undertake prudential supervision of registered banks.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38I; 1986 No 131 s 10

68 Exercise of powers under this Part

The powers conferred on the Governor-General, the Minister, and the Bank by this Part shall be exercised for the purposes of—

- (a) promoting the maintenance of a sound and efficient financial system; or
- (b) avoiding significant damage to the financial system that could result from the failure of a registered bank.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38J; 1986 No 131 s 10

68A Trans-Tasman co-operation

- (1) When performing functions or duties or exercising powers under this Part or the Insurance (Prudential Supervision) Act 2010, the Bank must—
 - (a) support prescribed Australian financial authorities in meeting their statutory responsibilities relating to prudential regulation and financial system stability in Australia; and
 - (b) to the extent reasonably practicable, avoid any action that is likely to have detrimental effect on financial system stability in Australia.
- (2) Subsection (3) applies where the Bank has reasonable cause to believe that an action it proposes to take is an action that is likely to have a detrimental effect on financial system stability in Australia.
- (3) The Bank must, to the extent it considers reasonably practicable in the circumstances having regard to urgency or other similar constraint, consult with and consider the advice of every prescribed Australian financial authority it considers to be relevant in the circumstances before taking the proposed action.
- (4) No performance of a function or duty or exercise of a power is invalid by reason only of a failure to comply with the provisions of this section.
- (5) The Governor-General may, by Order in Council, on the advice of the Minister given in accordance with a recommendation of the Bank, make regulations prescribing Australian financial authorities for the purposes of this section and section 121A.
- (6) Regulations under subsection (5) are secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements).

Legislation Act 2019 requirements for secondary legislation made under this section

Publication	PCO must publish it on the legislation website and notify it in the <i>Gazette</i>	LA19 s 69(1)(c)
Presentation	The Minister must present it to the House of Representatives	LA19 s 114, Sch 1 cl 32(1)(a)
Disallowance	It may be disallowed by the House of Representatives	LA19 ss 115, 116

This note is not part of the Act.

Section 68A: inserted, on 15 December 2006, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2006 (2006 No 51).

Section 68A(1): amended, on 8 September 2010, by section 241(1) of the Insurance (Prudential Supervision) Act 2010 (2010 No 111).

Section 68A(6): inserted, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

68B Bank to have regard to directions about government policy objectives

- (1) The Minister may direct the Bank to have regard to a government policy that relates to the Bank's functions under this Part and Parts 5B and 5C.
- (2) The Bank must have regard to every direction given by the Minister under this section.
- (3) The Minister must consult with the Bank before giving a direction.
- (4) A direction must—
 - (a) be set out in a written statement signed by the Minister; and
 - (b) as soon as practicable after it is given, be—
 - (i) presented to the House of Representatives by the Minister; and
 - (ii) published in the *Gazette*.
- (5) The Minister may not give a direction that requires the performance or non-performance of a particular act by the Bank, or any employee or office holder of the Bank, or the bringing about of a particular result, in respect of a particular person.
- (6) A direction may be amended, revoked, or replaced in the same way as it may be given.

Compare: 2004 No 115 ss 104(1), 113(1)(b), 114, 115(2)

Section 68B: inserted, on 10 September 2008, by section 15 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 59).

Section 68B(1): amended, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

Registration of banks

69 Register

- (1) The Bank must keep a public register of persons known as registered banks.
- (2) The Bank must determine the form of the register and may amend the form from time to time as it considers necessary.
- (2A) The register must include—
 - (a) the name of each registered bank; and
 - (b) the current rating of each registered bank under section 80 (if any); and
 - (c) any other prescribed information.
- (3) The Bank must take all reasonable steps to ensure that the information contained in the public register is available to members of the public at all reasonable times.

Section 69: replaced, on 1 November 2006, by section 7 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2006 (2006 No 51).

Section 69(2A): inserted, on 4 September 2013, by section 4 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2013 (2013 No 62).

70 Application for registration

- (1) Any person may apply to the Bank to be registered as a registered bank.
- (2) Applications to be registered as a registered bank shall be—
 - (a) made in such manner as may be specified by the Bank; and
 - (b) accompanied by payment of such fee as may be determined by the Bank from time to time with the approval of the Minister.
- (3) Every person who makes an application under this section shall furnish to the Bank such information as may be required by the Bank to assist it in determining the application.
- (4) A person commits an offence if the person provides false or misleading information to the Bank for the purposes of an application.
- (5) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156AC.
- (6) A determination under subsection (2)(b) is secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements).

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38C(3), (4), (5); 1986 No 131 s 10

Legislation Act 2019 requirements for secondary legislation made under this section

Publication	The maker must publish it in the <i>Gazette</i>	LA19 ss 73, 74(1)(a), Sch 1 cl 14
Presentation	It is not required to be presented to the House of Representatives because a transitional exemption applies under Schedule 1 of the Legislation Act 2019	LA19 s 114, Sch 1 cl 32(1)(a)
Disallowance	It may be disallowed by the House of Representatives	LA19 ss 115, 116

This note is not part of the Act.

Section 70(2)(b): amended, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

Section 70(4): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 11 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 70(5): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 11 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 70(6): inserted, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

71 Voluntary removal of name from register

- (1) A registered bank may, by notice in writing, require the Bank to remove the name of that registered bank from the register on a date specified in the notice, not being a date earlier than 28 days, or such shorter period as the Bank may agree to, after the date the notice is given.
- (2) The registered bank shall, within 7 days of giving that notice, give public notice of the fact that it had given the notice to the Bank.

- (3) The Bank must—
- (a) remove the name of the registered bank from the register on the date specified in the notice; and
 - (b) within 7 days after that date, arrange for the publication in the *Gazette* of a notice that indicates the removal of that name.
- (4) Except with the consent of the Bank, a registered bank shall not give a notice under subsection (1) if—
- (a) a notice has been given to that registered bank under section 99(2)(a); or
 - (b) a person has been appointed under section 99(2)(b) to exercise, in relation to that registered bank, the powers conferred by that paragraph; or
 - (c) a person has been appointed under section 101 to carry out an investigation of the affairs of that registered bank; or
 - (d) a direction is in force under section 113 in relation to that registered bank; or
 - (e) the registered bank is subject to statutory management.
- (5) The Bank may refuse to remove the name of a registered bank from the register if—
- (a) a notice has been given to the registered bank under section 99(2)(a); or
 - (b) a person has been appointed under section 99(2)(b) to exercise, in relation to that registered bank, the powers conferred by that paragraph; or
 - (c) a person has been appointed under section 101 to carry out an investigation into the affairs of that registered bank; or
 - (d) a direction is in force under section 113 in relation to that registered bank; or
 - (e) the registered bank is subject to statutory management.

Section 71(3): replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 12 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 71(4)(a): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 71(4)(b): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 71(4)(d): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 71(5)(a): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 71(5)(b): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 71(5)(d): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

72 Offence for person who is not registered bank to hold itself out to be registered bank

- (1) A person commits an offence if the person—
 - (a) is not a registered bank; and
 - (b) uses any name, title, trade mark, style, designation, or description that represents or implies that the person is a registered bank.
- (2) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156AC.

Section 72: replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 13 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

73 Determination of applications

- (1) The Bank shall not register any person as a registered bank unless it is satisfied that the business carried on, or proposed to be carried on, by the applicant consists of, or to a substantial extent consists of, or will, or will to a substantial extent, consist of, the borrowing and lending of money, or the provision of other financial services, or both.
- (2) In determining an application under section 70, the Bank must have regard to all of the following:
 - (a) the incorporation and ownership structure of the applicant; and
 - (b) the size and nature of the applicant's business or proposed business, or any part of the applicant's business or proposed business; and
 - (c) the ability of the applicant to carry on its business or proposed business in a prudent manner; and
 - (d) the standing of the applicant in the financial markets; and
 - (e) the suitability for their positions of the directors and senior managers of the applicant; and
 - (f) the standing of the owner of the applicant in the financial markets; and
 - (g) any other matters that may be prescribed in regulations.
- (3) For the purposes of subsection (2)(g), the Governor-General may, from time to time, by Order in Council, on the advice of the Minister given in accordance with a recommendation of the Bank, make regulations prescribing additional matters to which the Bank shall have regard in considering applications for registration.
- (4) The Bank shall give notice in the *Gazette* of the registration of any person as a registered bank under this section.
- (5) Regulations under subsection (3) are secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements).

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38D(1), (2), (4); 1986 No 131 s 10

Legislation Act 2019 requirements for secondary legislation made under this section

Publication	PCO must publish it on the legislation website and notify it in the <i>Gazette</i>	LA19 s 69(1)(c)
Presentation	The Minister must present it to the House of Representatives	LA19 s 114, Sch 1 cl 32(1)(a)
Disallowance	It may be disallowed by the House of Representatives	LA19 ss 115, 116

This note is not part of the Act.

Section 73(2): replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 14 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 73(5): inserted, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

73A Further matters to which Bank must have regard if applicant is overseas person

In determining an application from an overseas person, the Bank must, in addition to the matters set out in section 73(2), have regard to all of the following:

- (a) the law and regulatory requirements of the applicant's home jurisdiction that relate to—
 - (i) the recognition and priorities of claims of creditors or classes of creditors in the event of the insolvency of the applicant; and
 - (ii) the disclosure by the applicant of financial and other information of the kind that a registered bank must disclose under section 81; and
 - (iii) the accounting and auditing standards applicable to the applicant; and
 - (iv) the duties and powers of directors of the applicant; and
 - (v) the licensing, registration, authorisation, and supervision of the applicant; and
- (b) the nature and extent of the financial and other information disclosed to the public by the applicant.

Section 73A: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 15 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

73B Further matters to which Bank must have regard if applicant is subsidiary of overseas person

In determining an application from a subsidiary of an overseas person, the Bank must, in addition to the matters set out in section 73(2), have regard to all of the following:

- (a) the law and regulatory requirements of the home jurisdiction of the overseas person that relate to—
 - (i) the disclosure by the overseas person of financial and other information of the kind that a registered bank must disclose under section 81; and

- (ii) the accounting and auditing standards applicable to the overseas person; and
 - (iii) the duties and powers of the directors of the overseas person; and
 - (iv) the licensing, registration, authorisation, and supervision of the overseas person; and
- (b) the nature and extent of the financial and other information disclosed to the public by the overseas person.

Section 73B: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 15 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

74 Conditions of registration

- (1) A person may be registered as a registered bank unconditionally or subject to any conditions that the Bank may impose.
- (2) The Bank may, by notice in writing to a registered bank,—
 - (a) impose conditions of registration (whether or not the registration of the bank is subject to conditions); or
 - (b) vary, remove, add to, or substitute any conditions of registration.
- (3) The Bank must not exercise a power referred to in subsection (2) unless—
 - (a) the Bank gives the registered bank not less than 7 days' notice in writing of the Bank's intention to do so; and
 - (b) the notice contains, or is accompanied by, a statement of the Bank's reasons; and
 - (c) the registered bank has a reasonable opportunity to make submissions to the Bank; and
 - (d) the Bank has regard to those submissions.
- (4) The Bank may impose conditions that relate to any of the following matters:
 - (a) the matters to which the Bank must have regard under sections 73 to 73B in determining an application for registration, including any matters prescribed by regulations made under section 73(2)(g); and
 - (b) the matters referred to in section 78, including any matters prescribed by regulations made under that section; and
 - (c) the matters referred to in section 81, including any matters prescribed by an Order in Council made under that section.
- (5) A registered bank commits an offence if the registered bank fails to comply with a condition of registration imposed by the Bank under this section.
- (6) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156AB.

Section 74: replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 16 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

75 Publication of principles

The Bank shall publish the principles on which it acts, or proposes to act,—

- (a) in determining applications for registration; and
- (b) in imposing, varying, removing, or adding to conditions of registration.

76 Registration of certain persons

- (1) Every person, that immediately before the commencement of this Act, was a registered bank, or deemed to be a registered bank, pursuant to Part 5A of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Act 1964, shall continue to be a registered bank as if that person had been registered under this Act.
- (2) If that person was registered, or deemed to have been registered, under that Act subject to any conditions, those conditions shall continue to apply as if they had been imposed under section 74 of this Act.
- (3) Nothing in subsection (1) or subsection (2) limits any other provisions of this Part.

77 Cancellation of registration

- (1) The Minister may, by notice in writing to the Bank given in accordance with a recommendation of the Bank, direct the Bank to cancel the registration of a registered bank.
- (2) The Bank shall not make a recommendation under subsection (1) unless it is satisfied—
 - (a) that the registered bank was registered on information that was false or misleading in a material particular; or
 - (b) that, in relation to a registered bank,—
 - (i) there has been a change in any of the matters to which the Bank must have regard under section 73 (including a change in any of the matters prescribed by regulations made under section 73(2)(g)); and
 - (ii) the Bank considers the change to be materially adverse to the registered bank's standing or financial position; or
 - (ba) that, in relation to a registered bank,—
 - (i) there has been a transfer of direct or indirect control of the registered bank; and
 - (ii) the Bank considers the transfer to be materially adverse to the registered bank's standing or financial position; or
 - (bb) that, in relation to a registered bank,—
 - (i) there has been a change in any of the matters to which the Bank must have regard under section 73A or section 73B; and
 - (ii) the Bank considers the change to be materially adverse; or

- (c) if the registered bank is a body corporate—
 - (i) that an order has been made for the winding up of that body corporate; or
 - (ii) that a resolution has been passed for the voluntary winding up of that body corporate; or
 - (iii) that a receiver has been appointed in respect of that body corporate; or
 - (d) *[Repealed]*
 - (e) that a condition of registration has not been complied with; or
 - (f) that the registered bank has not carried on its business in a prudent manner; or
 - (g) that the registered bank has failed to comply with an obligation imposed under this Act or imposed by regulations made under this Act.
- (3) The Bank shall not make a recommendation under subsection (1) unless—
- (a) the Bank gives the registered bank not less than 7 days' notice in writing of the Bank's intention to consider making the recommendation; and
 - (b) the notice contains or is accompanied by a statement of the Bank's reasons; and
 - (c) the registered bank has a reasonable opportunity to make submissions to the Bank; and
 - (d) the Bank has regard to those submissions.
- (4) A copy of any written submission made by the registered bank shall be sent to the Minister together with any recommendation by the Bank.
- (5) The Bank must, as soon as practicable after receiving a notice from the Minister under subsection (1),—
- (a) inform the registered bank in writing of—
 - (i) the fact that the Minister has directed the Bank to cancel the registration of the registered bank; and
 - (ii) the grounds on which the Bank's recommendation to cancel the registration of the registered bank was made; and
 - (iii) the date of cancellation of the registration of the registered bank; and
 - (b) publish a notice of the cancellation in the *Gazette*.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38F(1), (2), (3)(a)–(e), (g), (4), (5); 1986 No 131 s 10

Section 77(1): replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 17(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 77(2)(b): replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 17(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 77(2)(ba): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 17(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 77(2)(bb): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 17(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 77(2)(d): repealed, on 21 August 2003, by section 17(3)(a) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 77(2)(g): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 17(3)(b) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 77(3): replaced, on 24 March 1995, by section 4 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1995 (1995 No 5).

Section 77(5): replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 17(4) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

77A Changes of ownership

- (1) A person must obtain the written consent of the Bank before giving effect to a transaction if,—
 - (a) in the case of a person who does not have a significant influence over a registered bank, the transaction would result in that person acquiring a significant influence over that registered bank; or
 - (b) in the case of a person who has, with the consent of the Bank, acquired a significant influence over a registered bank, the transaction would result in that person increasing the level of the person's significant influence over that registered bank beyond the level permitted in the existing consent; or
 - (c) in the case of a person who acquired a significant influence over a registered bank before the commencement of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003, the transaction would result in that person increasing the person's significant influence over that registered bank beyond the existing level.
- (2) The Bank may, in giving its consent,—
 - (a) specify the level of significant influence that a person may have or acquire over any registered bank without the need for a further consent; and
 - (b) impose any terms and conditions the Bank thinks fit.
- (3) The Bank may, at any time, by notice in writing, vary or revoke—
 - (a) a consent given under this section; or
 - (b) any term or condition of a consent.
- (4) A person commits an offence if the person fails to comply with subsection (1).
- (5) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156AA.
- (6) For the purposes of this section, a reference to a registered bank is a reference to a registered bank that is not an overseas person.

Section 77A: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 18 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

77B Effect of section 77A on contracts, etc

Nothing in section 77A invalidates any contract, or transfer of ownership, made without the written consent of the Bank.

Section 77B: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 18 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

78 Carrying on business in prudent manner

- (1) In—
- (a) having regard, under section 73(2)(c), to the ability of an applicant for registration as a registered bank to carry on its business or proposed business in a prudent manner; or
 - (b) determining under section 77(2)(f) or section 113(1)(e) that a registered bank has not carried on its business in a prudent manner,—
- the Bank shall confine its consideration to the following matters:
- (c) capital in relation to the size and nature of the business or proposed business:
 - (d) loan concentration or proposed loan concentration and risk exposures or proposed risk exposures:
 - (e) separation of the business or proposed business from other business and from other interests of any person owning or controlling the applicant or registered bank:
 - (f) internal controls and accounting systems or proposed internal controls and accounting systems:
 - (fa) risk management systems and policies or proposed risk management systems and policies:
 - (fb) arrangements for any business, or functions relating to any business, of the applicant or registered bank to be carried on by any person other than the applicant or the registered bank:
 - (g) such other matters as may from time to time be prescribed in regulations.
- (2) The Governor-General may, from time to time, by Order in Council, on the advice of the Minister given in accordance with a recommendation of the Bank, make regulations prescribing additional matters for the purposes of subsection (1)(g).
- (3) The Governor may, from time to time, issue, in such manner as the Governor may determine, guidelines for the purpose of interpreting any of the matters referred to in paragraphs (c) to (g) of subsection (1).
- (4) Regulations under subsection (2) are secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements).

Legislation Act 2019 requirements for secondary legislation made under this section

Publication	PCO must publish it on the legislation website and notify it in the <i>Gazette</i>	LA19 s 69(1)(c)
Presentation	The Minister must present it to the House of Representatives	LA19 s 114, Sch 1 cl 32(1)(a)
Disallowance	It may be disallowed by the House of Representatives	LA19 ss 115, 116

This note is not part of the Act.

Section 78(1)(b): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 19(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 78(1)(fa): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 19(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 78(1)(fb): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 19(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 78(3): amended, on 24 March 1995, by section 5 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1995 (1995 No 5).

Section 78(4): inserted, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

79 Annual fee

[Repealed]

Section 79: repealed, on 1 January 1996, by section 6(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1995 (1995 No 5).

80 Credit rating of registered banks

- (1) The Bank may, by notice in writing to any registered bank or to all registered banks or to all members of any class of registered banks, require each of those banks to—
 - (a) obtain a rating of its creditworthiness or financial condition by a person or organisation nominated or approved by the Bank; and
 - (b) maintain a current rating of the type referred to in paragraph (a).
- (2) The Bank may require a registered bank to publish the registered bank's current rating, and all the qualifications to that rating, in the manner and with the frequency that the Bank directs.
- (3) A person commits an offence if the person fails to comply with this section.
- (4) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156AC.

Section 80: replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 20 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Financial disclosure by registered banks

81 Public disclosure of information or data by registered banks

- (1) The Governor-General may, by Order in Council made on the advice of the Minister that is given in accordance with a recommendation of the Bank, prescribe information or data that must be published by—

- (a) all registered banks; or
- (b) any class of registered banks specified in the order.
- (2) A registered bank to which an Order in Council applies must publish the information or data specified in the order—
 - (a) in a document to be known as a disclosure statement; and
 - (b) in the manner and with the frequency specified in the order.
- (3) The information or data that may be prescribed in an Order in Council includes, without limitation, information or data about—
 - (a) the corporate matters of a registered bank; and
 - (b) the financial matters of a registered bank; and
 - (c) the prudential matters of a registered bank; and
 - (d) any other matters relating to the business, operation, and management of a registered bank.
- (4) An Order in Council under this section is secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements).
- (5) *[Repealed]*

Legislation Act 2019 requirements for secondary legislation made under this section

Publication	The maker must publish it in the <i>Gazette</i>	LA19 ss 67(d)(i), 73, 74(1)(a), Sch 1 cl 14
Presentation	It is not required to be presented to the House of Representatives because a transitional exemption applies under Schedule 1 of the Legislation Act 2019	LA19 s 114, Sch 1 cl 32(1)(a)
Disallowance	It may be disallowed by the House of Representatives	LA19 ss 115, 116

This note is not part of the Act.

Section 81: replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 21 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 81(4): replaced, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

Section 81(5): repealed, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

81AA Further matters that may be prescribed

- (1) An Order in Council made under section 81 may, in addition to the matters referred to in section 81(3), require a registered bank to disclose information or data—
 - (a) about an associated person of the registered bank if the associated person is incorporated, domiciled, or resident in New Zealand;
 - (b) about an associated person of the registered bank if the information or data is publicly available in the country in which the associated person is incorporated, domiciled, or resident and if that country is not New Zealand;

- (c) about any individual member of its banking group, whether or not the member is incorporated, domiciled, or resident in New Zealand:
 - (d) about a body incorporated in New Zealand, or an overseas company registered under section 337 of the Companies Act 1993, in which a holding company of the registered bank has a substantial interest.
- (2) An Order in Council made under section 81 may also—
 - (a) prescribe information that is required to be contained in financial statements:
 - (b) require the publication of financial statements and notes to those statements for any period or periods specified in the order:
 - (c) require the information to be published in consolidated form:
 - (d) require financial information that is required to be published to be taken from audited financial statements:
 - (e) require the information that is required to be published to be audited and to be accompanied by an auditor's report:
 - (f) require a disclosure statement to contain any statements specified in the order that are made by—
 - (i) the directors of the registered bank or persons authorised in writing by the directors of the bank; and
 - (ii) in the case of an overseas incorporated registered bank, its New Zealand chief executive officer:
 - (g) incorporate by reference a framework, standard, specification, or requirement that is published by, or on behalf of, any body or person in any country—
 - (i) in whole or in part; and
 - (ii) with any modifications, additions, or variations specified in the Order in Council.
- (3) Schedule 1 of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 applies to any material incorporated by reference in an Order in Council made under section 81 of this Act as if references in that schedule to regulations were references to an Order in Council made under section 81.

Section 81AA: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 21 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 81AA(2)(a): replaced, on 1 April 2014, by section 126 of the Financial Reporting (Amendments to Other Enactments) Act 2013 (2013 No 102).

Section 81AA(2)(g): inserted, on 10 September 2008, by section 16(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 59).

Section 81AA(3): replaced, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

81AB Disclosure statement not required to include information or data about customers or clients of registered banks

- (1) Despite sections 81 and 81AA, a registered bank is not required to publish in a disclosure statement any information or data about the affairs of a particular customer or client of—
 - (a) the registered bank; or
 - (b) an associated person of the registered bank; or
 - (c) a company in which a holding company of the registered bank has a substantial interest.
- (2) Nothing in subsection (1) applies to the publication by a registered bank of information or data about transactions with related parties of—
 - (a) the registered bank; or
 - (b) an associated person of the registered bank; or
 - (c) a company in which a holding company of the registered bank has a substantial interest.
- (3) Subsection (1) does not extend to the publication of the following matters:
 - (a) the amount of any loan or risk exposure (without disclosing the identity of the particular customer or client to whom it relates); or
 - (b) the number of loans or risk exposures that fall within a specified range of amounts and the actual amounts of those loans or risk exposures; or
 - (c) the number of loans or risk exposures that fall within a specified range of percentages or are above a specified percentage, as the case may be, of the capital or equity of the registered bank, or an associated person of the registered bank, or the banking group or a company in which a holding company of a registered bank has a substantial interest, and the actual amounts involved.

Section 81AB: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 21 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

81AC Duty to supply information or data to registered bank

- (1) This section applies to—
 - (a) an associated person of a registered bank; and
 - (b) a body incorporated in New Zealand, or an overseas company registered under section 337 of the Companies Act 1993, in which a holding company of a registered bank has a substantial interest.
- (2) A person to whom this section applies must, on being required by a registered bank to do so for the purpose of enabling the registered bank to comply with an Order in Council made under section 81, supply the registered bank with any information or data that the registered bank may be required to disclose under section 81AA if that information or data—

- (a) is in the possession, custody, or control of that person; and
- (b) is not in the possession, custody, or control of the registered bank.
- (3) A person to whom this section applies commits an offence if, without lawful justification or excuse, the person fails to comply with a requirement of a registered bank under this section.
- (4) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156AC.

Section 81AC: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 21 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

81A Bank to consult

- (1) Before making a recommendation under section 81(1) (including a recommendation to amend any Order in Council made under that subsection) the Bank must—
 - (a) consult with—
 - (i) the FMA; and
 - (ii) registered banks that will be affected by any Order in Council made under that subsection; and
 - (iii) such other persons as the Bank considers will be substantially affected by any Order in Council made under that subsection or organisations representing those persons; and
 - (b) ensure that the persons referred to in paragraph (a) have a reasonable opportunity to make submissions to the Bank; and
 - (c) have regard to those submissions.
- (2) Failure to comply with subsection (1) does not affect the validity of any Order in Council under section 81(1).
- (3) *[Repealed]*

Section 81A: inserted, on 24 March 1995, by section 7 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1995 (1995 No 5).

Section 81A(1)(a)(i): amended, on 1 May 2011, by section 82 of the Financial Markets Authority Act 2011 (2011 No 5).

Section 81A(3): repealed, on 1 April 2019, by section 35 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

82 Disclosure statements must be signed

- (1) Every disclosure statement that a registered bank is required to publish under section 81 must be dated and signed,—
 - (a) in the case of a body corporate, by every director of the body corporate or by each director's agent authorised in writing to do so; and
 - (b) in the case of an overseas incorporated registered bank, by its New Zealand chief executive officer or that person's agent authorised in writing to do so.

- (2) Every overseas incorporated registered bank must notify the Bank in writing of the name and address of its New Zealand chief executive officer and any subsequent changes to those details.
- (3) If an overseas incorporated registered bank fails to comply with subsection (2), the Bank may, after giving the registered bank 14 days' notice in writing of its intention to do so, specify a particular employee of that registered bank to be its New Zealand chief executive officer for the purposes of this Act.
- (4) If the Bank exercises the power conferred by subsection (3), it must give notice in writing to the registered bank as soon as practicable.

Section 82: replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 22 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

83 Bank may require disclosure statement to be corrected

Where the Bank considers that a disclosure statement published by a registered bank—

- (a) contains information that is false or misleading; or
- (b) does not contain information which it is required to contain, whether or not the information contained in the disclosure statement is false or misleading as a result of the omission,—

the Bank may, by notice in writing to the registered bank, require the registered bank to—

- (c) publish a disclosure statement that does not contain false or misleading information; or
- (d) publish a disclosure statement that contains the information that was previously omitted; or
- (e) take such other corrective action as the Bank may specify in the notice.

Section 83(d): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Advertising by registered banks

[Repealed]

Heading: repealed, on 24 March 1995, by section 8 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1995 (1995 No 5).

84 Interpretation

[Repealed]

Section 84: repealed, on 24 March 1995, by section 8 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1995 (1995 No 5).

85 Content of advertisements by registered banks

[Repealed]

Section 85: repealed, on 24 March 1995, by section 8 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1995 (1995 No 5).

86 Regulations

[Repealed]

Section 86: repealed, on 24 March 1995, by section 8 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1995 (1995 No 5).

87 Offence to advertise in contravention of regulations

[Repealed]

Section 87: repealed, on 24 March 1995, by section 8 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1995 (1995 No 5).

88 Bank may prohibit advertisements by registered banks

[Repealed]

Section 88: repealed, on 24 March 1995, by section 8 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1995 (1995 No 5).

Provisions applying to disclosure statements

Heading: replaced, on 24 March 1995, by section 9 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1995 (1995 No 5).

89 Offence to fail to publish required information in disclosure statement

- (1) A registered bank commits an offence if, without lawful justification or excuse, the registered bank fails to publish information that it is required to publish in a disclosure statement under section 81.
- (2) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156AC.

Section 89: replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 23 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

89A Offence to publish false or misleading disclosure statements

- (1) If a disclosure statement that includes information that is false or misleading is published by a registered bank, all of the following persons commit an offence:
 - (a) the registered bank; and
 - (b) every director of the registered bank who signed the disclosure statement or on whose behalf the disclosure statement was signed; and
 - (c) in the case of an overseas incorporated registered bank, the New Zealand chief executive officer who signed the disclosure statement or on whose behalf the disclosure statement was signed.
- (2) It is a defence to a prosecution for an offence against this section if—
 - (a) the defendant proves that the information was immaterial; or
 - (b) in the case of a defendant who is director of a registered bank or a New Zealand chief executive officer of an overseas incorporated registered bank, that defendant proves that he or she had reasonable grounds to believe, and believed, up to the publication of the disclosure statement, that the information was true.

- (3) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156AC.

Section 89A: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 23 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

89B Offence to fail to make most recent disclosure statement publicly available

- (1) A registered bank commits an offence if, without lawful justification or excuse, the registered bank fails to make its most recent disclosure statement publicly available in the manner set out in an Order in Council made under section 81.
- (2) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156AB.

Section 89B: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 23 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

89C Other offences in relation to disclosure statements

- (1) A registered bank commits an offence if the registered bank fails to comply with a requirement of the Bank under section 83 for the registered bank to—
- (a) publish a disclosure statement that does not contain false or misleading information; or
 - (b) publish a disclosure statement that contains information that was previously omitted; or
 - (c) take the corrective action specified by the Bank in a notice given under that section.
- (2) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156AC.

Section 89C: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 23 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

90 Civil liability

Subject to section 91, the following persons are liable to pay compensation to any person who sustains a loss by reason of subscribing for any debt security issued by a registered bank in reliance on false or misleading information contained in a disclosure statement, namely,—

- (a) the registered bank; and
- (b) every person holding office as a director of the registered bank at the time of the publication of the disclosure statement; and
- (c) the New Zealand chief executive officer of an overseas incorporated registered bank at the time of the publication of the disclosure statement.

Section 90: replaced, on 24 March 1995, by section 9 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1995 (1995 No 5).

Section 90(a): replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 24 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 90(b): replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 24 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 90(c): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 24 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

91 Defences

A person is not liable under section 90 in relation to false or misleading information that is included in a disclosure statement if that person proves that—

- (a) the disclosure statement was published without his or her knowledge or consent and, on becoming aware of the publication, he or she forthwith gave notice to the Bank that it was published without his or her knowledge or consent and, as soon as practicable, also gave reasonable public notice that it was published without his or her knowledge or consent; or
- (b) after publication of the disclosure statement and before the securities were subscribed for, he or she, on becoming aware of the false or misleading information, withdrew his or her consent to the disclosure statement, forthwith gave notice to the Bank of the withdrawal of that consent and, as soon as practicable, also gave reasonable public notice of the withdrawal of that consent; or
- (c) he or she had reasonable grounds to believe and did, up to the time of the subscription for the securities, believe that the statement was true.

Section 91: replaced, on 24 March 1995, by section 9 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1995 (1995 No 5).

92 Fair Trading Act 1986 not affected

Nothing in sections 89 to 91 limits or affects the Fair Trading Act 1986.

Section 92: replaced, on 24 March 1995, by section 9 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1995 (1995 No 5).

Supply of information

93 Supply of information by registered banks for purposes of prudential supervision

- (1) For the purposes of this Part, the Bank may, by notice in writing to any registered bank or by notice in the *Gazette* that applies to any specified class of registered banks, require the registered bank or, as the case may be, registered banks of that class to supply to the Bank any information, data, or forecasts about—
 - (a) the corporate matters of the registered bank:
 - (b) the financial matters of the registered bank:
 - (c) the prudential matters of the registered bank:
 - (d) any other matters relating to the business, operation, or management of the registered bank.
- (2) A registered bank may be required to supply information, data, or forecasts—
 - (a) relating to business carried on by the registered bank in New Zealand or elsewhere (whether that business is carried on as principal, broker, agent, or intermediary); and

- (b) in a consolidated form (if specified by the Bank).
- (3) A notice may specify—
 - (a) the periods for which, and the form in which, the information, data, or forecasts must be supplied; and
 - (b) the time by which, and the place in New Zealand at which, the information, data, or forecasts must be supplied.
- (4) The Bank may, by a subsequent notice, vary, revoke, or amend a notice.
- (5) A registered bank commits an offence if, without lawful justification or excuse, the registered bank—
 - (a) fails to comply in any respect with any requirements of the Bank under this section; or
 - (b) supplies information or data that the registered bank is required to supply under this section that is false or misleading in a material particular.
- (6) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156AB.

Section 93: replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 25 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

93A Scope of notice under section 93

The Bank may, by notice under section 93, require a registered bank or a specified class of registered banks to supply, without limitation, information, data, or forecasts in relation to—

- (a) any associated person of a registered bank; or
- (b) a body incorporated in New Zealand, or an overseas company registered under section 337 of the Companies Act 1993, in which a holding company of a registered bank has a substantial interest.

Section 93A: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 25 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

93B Certain persons may be required to supply information to registered banks

- (1) A person referred to in section 93A(a) or (b) must, on being required by a registered bank to do so, supply the registered bank with information, data, or forecasts relating to that person in order to enable the registered bank to comply with a notice under section 93.
- (2) A person commits an offence if, without lawful justification or excuse, the person fails to comply with this section.
- (3) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156AB.

Section 93B: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 25 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

93C Supply of information by other persons for purposes of prudential supervision

- (1) If the Bank has reasonable grounds to believe that a person has information, data, or forecasts that the Bank could require a registered bank or a class of registered banks to supply under section 93, it may, by notice in writing to that person, require that person to supply the information, data, or forecasts to the Bank.
- (2) A notice may specify—
 - (a) the periods for which, and the form in which, the information, data, or forecasts must be supplied; and
 - (b) the time by which, and the place in New Zealand at which, the information, data, or forecasts must be supplied.
- (3) The Bank may, by a subsequent notice, vary, revoke, or amend a notice.
- (4) A person commits an offence if, without lawful justification or excuse, the person—
 - (a) fails to comply with any requirements of the Bank under this section; or
 - (b) supplies information or data that the person is required to supply under this section that is false or misleading in a material particular.
- (5) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156AB.

Section 93C: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 25 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

94 Requirement that information, data, or forecasts be audited

- (1) The Bank may, by notice in writing, require a registered bank or other person to obtain an audit, by an auditor approved by the Bank, of any information, data, or forecasts that the registered bank or other person, as the case may be, is required to supply under section 93 or section 93C.
- (2) A person commits an offence if, without lawful justification or excuse, the person fails to comply with this section.
- (3) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156AA.

Section 94: replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 25 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

95 Bank may require report relating to registered banks, etc

- (1) The Bank may, by notice in writing to a registered bank, require that registered bank to supply the Bank with a report or series of reports, prepared by a person approved by the Bank, on—
 - (a) the corporate matters of the registered bank;
 - (b) the financial matters of the registered bank;
 - (c) the prudential matters of the registered bank;

- (d) any other matters relating to the business, operation, or management of the registered bank:
- (e) any of the matters referred to in paragraphs (a) to (d) in relation to—
 - (i) any associated person of the registered bank:
 - (ii) a body incorporated in New Zealand, or an overseas company registered under section 337 of the Companies Act 1993, in which a holding company of the registered bank has a substantial interest.
- (2) A person referred to in subsection (1)(e)(i) or (e)(ii) must, if required to do so by a registered bank, supply information relating to that person in order to enable the registered bank to comply with a notice under this section.
- (3) A person commits an offence if, without lawful justification or excuse, the person fails to comply with this section.
- (4) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156AC.

Section 95: replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 25 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

95A Bank may require report under section 95 to be published

- (1) The Bank may, by notice in writing to a registered bank, require that the report or series of reports, as the case may be, that has been prepared under section 95 in relation to the registered bank be published by that registered bank in the form specified in the notice.
- (2) A registered bank commits an offence if, without lawful justification or excuse, the registered bank fails to comply with this section.
- (3) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156AC.

Section 95A: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 25 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

96 Disclosure of information to Bank by auditors

Every person who holds, or at any time has held, office as required by any enactment, as an auditor of a registered bank or an associated person of a registered bank, shall disclose to the Bank information relating to the affairs of that registered bank or associated person obtained in the course of holding that office if, in the opinion of that person,—

- (a) the registered bank or associated person is insolvent or is likely to become insolvent or is in serious financial difficulties; and
- (b) the disclosure of that information is likely to assist, or be relevant to, the exercise by the Bank of its powers under this Part.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38M(1); 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 13

Section 96: amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 96(a): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

97 Auditor to inform of intention to disclose

Every auditor shall, before disclosing any information to the Bank under section 96, take reasonable steps to inform the registered bank or associated person of the intention to disclose the information and the nature of the information.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38M(5); 1986 No 131 s 10

Section 97 heading: amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 97: amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

98 Protection of auditors

- (1) No civil, criminal, or disciplinary proceedings shall lie against any auditor arising from the disclosure in good faith of information to the Bank pursuant to section 96.
- (2) No tribunal, body, or authority, having jurisdiction in respect of the professional conduct of any auditor shall make any order against, or do any act in relation to, that person in respect of such disclosure.
- (3) No information received by the Bank pursuant to section 96 shall be admissible in evidence in any proceedings against the auditor concerned.
- (4) Nothing in subsection (3) of this section shall limit the admissibility of any information obtained in any other way.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38M(2); 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 15

Access to information by home country supervisor

Heading: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 26 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

98A Access to information by home country supervisor

- (1) This section applies to—
 - (a) a registered bank; and
 - (b) any member of the registered bank's banking group (being a member that has a physical presence in New Zealand).
- (2) For the purpose of the exercise by a home country supervisor of its supervisory functions, the Bank may authorise a home country supervisor to—
 - (a) conduct an inspection of any person to whom this section applies; or

- (b) require any person to whom this section applies to supply to the home country supervisor any information, data, or forecasts relating to that person.
- (3) The information, data, or forecasts that a home country supervisor may be authorised to obtain may include, without limitation, information about the affairs of a particular customer or client of a person to whom this section applies.
- (4) The Bank may grant an authorisation only if it is satisfied that sufficient provision exists to protect the confidentiality of the information, data, or forecasts obtained or required by the home country supervisor.
- (5) An authorisation may be—
 - (a) granted for the period or periods that the Bank thinks fit; and
 - (b) varied, revoked, or amended by the Bank at any time.
- (6) The Bank must give notice in writing to a person to whom this section applies if the Bank—
 - (a) grants an authorisation in relation to that person; or
 - (b) varies, revokes, or amends that authorisation.
- (7) This section has effect despite anything to the contrary in any other enactment or rule of law.
- (8) For the purposes of this section, a member of a registered bank's banking group has a physical presence in New Zealand if that member—
 - (a) has an office in New Zealand; or
 - (b) has an agent in New Zealand.

Section 98A: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 26 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

98B Duties of person on receipt of notice under section 98A

- (1) A person to whom section 98A applies must, on receipt of a notice from the Bank under that section, comply with that notice by, as the case may be,—
 - (a) permitting the home country supervisor to conduct an inspection of that person; or
 - (b) supplying the home country supervisor with the required information, data, or forecasts within the time, and at the place, specified in the notice.
- (2) A person commits an offence if, without lawful justification or excuse, the person—
 - (a) fails to comply in any respect with any requirements notified by the Bank under this section; or
 - (b) supplies any information or data that the person is required to supply under this section that is false or misleading in a material particular.

- (3) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156AA.

Section 98B: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 26 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Powers to obtain information and documents

99 Powers to obtain information and documents

- (1) This section applies if the Bank has reasonable cause to believe—
- (a) that any information or data published in a disclosure statement by a registered bank under section 81 or section 83 is false or misleading in a material particular; or
 - (b) that a registered bank has failed to publish information or data that it is required to publish in a disclosure statement under section 81 or section 83; or
 - (c) that any information or data supplied to the Bank by a registered bank under section 93 is false or misleading in a material particular; or
 - (d) that any information or data supplied by a person to a registered bank under section 93B or to the Bank under section 93C, as the case may be, is false or misleading in a material particular; or
 - (e) that a registered bank or a person, as the case may be, has failed to comply with any requirement to supply information, data, or forecasts under section 93 or section 93B or section 93C; or
 - (f) that a registered bank has failed to comply with section 95.
- (2) If this section applies, the Bank may,—
- (a) by notice in writing to the registered bank or person, require that registered bank or person to supply to the Bank, within the time specified in the notice, the information or data specified in the notice; or
 - (b) appoint, in writing, any suitably qualified person to enter and search any premises and inspect, remove, and take copies of any documents in the possession, custody, or control of any person and, if necessary, require the reproduction in usable form of any information recorded or stored in those documents.
- (3) A person commits an offence if, without lawful justification or excuse, the person hinders, obstructs, or delays, in the conduct of an inspection under this section, any person duly authorised to make that inspection.
- (4) A registered bank or person commits an offence if, without lawful justification or excuse, the registered bank or person—
- (a) fails to comply with any requirement of the Bank under subsection (2)(a); or
 - (b) supplies any information or data that is required to be supplied under subsection (2)(a) that is false or misleading in a material particular.

- (5) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out,—
- (a) in the case of an offence against subsection (3), in section 156AB; and
 - (b) in the case of an offence against subsection (4), in section 156AC.

Section 99: replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 27 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

100 Requirements on entering and searching premises

- (1) No person appointed pursuant to section 99(2)(b) shall enter and search any premises, or inspect, remove, or take copies of any documents, or extracts from documents, in the possession of, or under the control of, any person, or require the reproduction in usable form of any information recorded or stored in any documents, unless—
- (a) the occupier of the premises, or the person who has possession of the documents, agrees; or
 - (b) that person obtains a warrant under section 106.
- (2) Every person authorised to enter and search any premises pursuant to a warrant obtained under section 106 shall, on first entering those premises, and, if requested, at any subsequent time, produce—
- (a) evidence of that person's authority to enter the premises; and
 - (b) evidence of that person's identity.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38N(2), (7); 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 18

Section 100(1): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Investigations

101 Investigation of affairs of registered bank

Where the Bank is satisfied that it is necessary or desirable for the purpose of determining whether or not to exercise the powers conferred under section 113 or section 117 that an investigation of the affairs of any registered bank or associated person of a registered bank should be carried out, the Bank may appoint, in writing, any person to carry out an investigation of the affairs of that registered bank or associated person of that registered bank.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38O(1); 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 19

Section 101: amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

102 Powers of person appointed to carry out investigation

- (1) Any person appointed under section 101 may, for the purposes of carrying out an investigation of the affairs of a registered bank or associated person of a registered bank,—

- (a) by notice in writing, require that registered bank or associated person, or any officer or employee of that registered bank or associated person, or any other person, to—
 - (i) supply any information or data relating to the business, operation, and management of the registered bank or associated person:
 - (ii) produce for inspection any documents of, or relating to, the business, operation, and management of that registered bank or associated person in the custody, or under the control, of that registered bank or associated person, officer, employee, or person:
 - (iii) where necessary, reproduce in usable form any information recorded or stored in such documents:
 - (b) take copies of any documents produced for inspection under paragraph (a):
 - (c) require any officer or employee of that registered bank or associated person, or any other person, to answer any question relating to the business, operation, and management of that registered bank or associated person.
- (1A) Any questioning under subsection (1)(c) may be carried out by any person appointed under section 101, or a barrister or solicitor acting on behalf of that person, who may require the person who is subject to the questioning to take an oath or make an affirmation.
- (2) Subject to section 104, any person appointed under section 101 may, for the purposes of carrying out an investigation of the affairs of the registered bank or associated person, at any time,—
- (a) enter and search any premises:
 - (b) inspect, remove, and take copies of any documents, or extracts from documents, relating to the business, operation, and management of that registered bank or associated person in the possession, or under the control, of any person:
 - (c) if necessary, require any person to reproduce in usable form any information recorded or stored in those documents.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38O(2), (4); 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 21

Section 102(1): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 102(1)(a): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 102(1)(a)(i): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 102(1)(a)(ii): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 102(1)(c): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 102(1A): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 102(2): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 102(2)(b): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

103 Offences in relation to investigations

- (1) Every person commits an offence against this Act who, without lawful justification or excuse,—
 - (a) hinders, obstructs, or delays any person appointed to carry out an investigation under section 101 in carrying out that investigation; or
 - (b) refuses to answer any question put to him or her under section 102; or
 - (c) supplies any information, or provides an answer to any question, required to be supplied or provided pursuant to section 102 which is false or misleading in a material particular.
- (2) Every registered bank or associated person of the registered bank commits an offence against this Act if, without lawful justification or excuse,—
 - (a) it fails to comply with any requirement of a person appointed to carry out an investigation under section 101; or
 - (b) it supplies any information or data, or provides an answer to any question, required to be supplied or provided pursuant to section 102(1) which is false or misleading in a material particular.
- (3) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156AC.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38O(11), (12), (13); 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 20

Section 103(1)(b): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 103(1)(c): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 103(2): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 103(2)(b): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 103(3): replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

104 Requirements to be complied with by person carrying out investigation

- (1) Any person who exercises any powers conferred by section 102(1) shall, if requested, produce the instrument of that person's appointment under section 101.
- (2) No person who exercises any powers conferred by section 102(2) shall enter and search any premises, or inspect, remove, and take copies of any documents or extracts from documents, or require the reproduction in usable form of any information recorded or stored in documents, unless—

- (a) the occupier of the premises, or the person who has possession of the documents, agrees; or
 - (b) that person obtains a warrant under section 106.
- (3) Every person authorised to enter and search any premises pursuant to a warrant obtained under section 106 shall, on first entering those premises and, if requested, at any subsequent time, produce—
 - (a) evidence of that person's authority to enter the premises; and
 - (b) evidence of that person's identity.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38O(3), (5), (9); 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 22

Miscellaneous provisions

105 Confidentiality of information

- (1) This section applies to—
 - (a) information, data, and forecasts supplied or disclosed to, or obtained by,—
 - (i) the Bank:
 - (ii) a person appointed under section 99(2)(b), section 101, or section 119—

under, or for the purposes of, or in connection with the exercise of powers conferred by, this Part:
 - (b) information and data derived from or based upon information, data, and forecasts referred to in paragraph (a):
 - (c) information relating to the exercise, or possible exercise, of the powers conferred by this Part.
- (2) Information, data, and forecasts to which this section applies shall not be published or disclosed by the Bank, any officer or employee of the Bank, or a person appointed under section 99(2)(b), section 101, or section 119, except—
 - (a) with the consent of the person to whom the information relates:
 - (b) to the extent that the information is available to the public under any Act, other than the Official Information Act 1982, or is otherwise publicly available information:
 - (c) in statistical or summary form arranged in such a manner as to prevent any information published or disclosed from being identified by any person as relating to any particular person:
 - (d) for the purposes of, or in connection with, the exercise of powers conferred by this Part:
 - (e) in connection with any proceedings for an offence against this Act:
 - (f) to any central bank, authority, or body in any other country which exercises functions corresponding to or similar to those conferred on the

Bank under this Part for the purposes of the exercise by that central bank, authority, or body of those functions:

- (g) to any person whom the Bank is satisfied has a proper interest in receiving such information.
- (3) No information, data, or forecasts shall be published or disclosed pursuant to paragraph (f) or paragraph (g) of subsection (2) unless the Bank is satisfied that satisfactory provision exists to protect the confidentiality of the information, data, or forecasts published or disclosed.
- (4) No officer or employee of the Bank and no person appointed under section 99(2)(b), section 101, or section 119 shall use any information, data, or forecasts to which this section applies for a purpose not connected with the purpose for which such information, data, or forecasts was, or were, supplied, disclosed, or obtained.
- (5) No person to whom any information, data, or forecasts to which this section applies is or are published or disclosed pursuant to subsection (2)(d) shall publish, disclose, or use such information, data, or forecasts except—
 - (a) for the purposes of, or in connection with the exercise of powers conferred by, this Part; and
 - (b) in accordance with such conditions as may be specified by the Bank.
- (6) No person to whom any information, data, or forecasts to which this section applies is or are published or disclosed pursuant to subsection (2)(a) or subsection (2)(g), shall publish, disclose, or use such information, data, or forecasts unless the publication, disclosure, or use is—
 - (a) authorised by the Bank; or
 - (b) necessary or desirable in connection with the exercise of any function or power conferred by any enactment.
- (7) A person referred to in subsection (7A) commits an offence if the person contravenes this section.
- (7A) The persons are—
 - (a) any officer or employee of the Bank; or
 - (b) a person appointed under section 99(2)(b), section 101, or section 119.
- (7B) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156AA.
- (8) Nothing in the Official Information Act 1982 or any other Act, other than this Act, applies to information, data, and forecasts to which this section applies whether or not such information, data, and forecasts has or have been published or disclosed to any person pursuant to this section.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38P; 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 23

Section 105(1)(a)(ii): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 105(2): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 105(2)(b): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 105(4): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 105(7): replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 105(7A): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 105(7B): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

106 Procedure for obtaining warrants

- (1) An issuing officer (within the meaning of section 3 of the Search and Surveillance Act 2012) who is satisfied, on application made in the manner provided in subpart 3 of Part 4 of that Act, that there are reasonable grounds for believing—
 - (aaa) that any information or data published in a disclosure statement by a registered bank under section 81 or section 83 is false or misleading in a material particular; or
 - (aa) that a registered bank has failed to publish information that it is required to publish in a disclosure statement under section 81 or section 83; or
 - (a) that any information or data supplied to the Bank by a registered bank pursuant to section 93 is false or misleading in a material particular; or
 - (b) that a registered bank has failed to comply with any requirement to supply information, data, or forecasts pursuant to section 93; or
 - (ba) that any information or data supplied by a person to a registered bank under section 93B or to the Bank under section 93C, as the case may be, is false or misleading in a material particular; or
 - (bb) that a person has failed to comply with any requirement to supply information, data, or forecasts to a registered bank under section 93B, or to the Bank under section 93C as the case may be; or
 - (c) that a registered bank has failed to comply with section 95—may issue a warrant, in terms of section 107, to a person appointed pursuant to section 99(2)(b).
- (2) An issuing officer (within the meaning of section 3 of the Search and Surveillance Act 2012) who is satisfied, on an application made in the manner provided in subpart 3 of Part 4 of that Act, that there are reasonable grounds for believing that it is necessary for the purpose of determining whether to exercise the powers conferred under section 113 or section 117 that an investigation of

the affairs of a registered bank should be carried out, may issue a warrant, in terms of section 107, to a person appointed under section 101.

- (3) Part 4 of the Search and Surveillance Act 2012 (except sections 118 and 119) applies.

Compare: 1964 No 134 ss 38N(3), (5), 38O(6); 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 24

Section 106(1): amended, on 1 October 2012, by section 297(4) of the Search and Surveillance Act 2012 (2012 No 24).

Section 106(1): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 28(3) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 106(1)(aaa): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 28(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 106(1)(aa): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 28(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 106(1)(ba): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 28(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 106(1)(bb): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 28(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 106(2): amended, on 1 October 2012, by section 297(5) of the Search and Surveillance Act 2012 (2012 No 24).

Section 106(2): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 28(4) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 106(3): replaced, on 1 October 2012, by section 297(6) of the Search and Surveillance Act 2012 (2012 No 24).

107 Effect of warrant

- (1) Every warrant issued under section 106 authorises the person named in it, at any time and, if necessary, by force, to—
- (a) enter and search the premises named in it:
 - (b) inspect, remove, and take copies of documents or extracts from documents relating to the business, operation and management of the registered bank in the possession, or under the control, of any person:
 - (c) where necessary, require any information recorded or stored in those documents to be reproduced in usable form.
- (2) The warrant shall continue in force for a period of 1 month or until the purpose for which it was granted has been satisfied, whichever is the lesser.
- (3) Every person named in the warrant shall, as soon as practicable after removing any documents or extracts from documents from any premises, supply a copy of the documents or extracts to the person from whom the documents or extracts were removed.

Compare: 1964 No 134 ss 38N(4), (6), (8), 38O(7), (8), (10)

108 Effect of proceedings

- (1) Where any person commences any proceedings in any court in respect of the exercise of any powers conferred by section 99 or section 101 or section 102,

until a final decision in relation to those proceedings is given, the powers may be, or may continue to be, exercised as if no such proceedings had been commenced, and no person shall be excused from fulfilling any obligation under those sections by reason of those proceedings.

- (2) This section shall apply notwithstanding the provisions of any other Act or any rule of law.

Compare: 1964 No 134 ss 38N(11), 38O(14); 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 26

109 Effect of final decision that exercise of powers under section 99 unlawful

In any case where it is declared in a final decision given in any proceedings in respect of the exercise of powers conferred by section 99 that the exercise of any powers conferred by that section is unlawful, to the extent to which the exercise of those powers is declared unlawful,—

- (a) the Bank shall ensure that forthwith after the decision of the court is given—
- (i) any information and data supplied by the registered bank pursuant to subsection (2)(a) of that section is destroyed:
 - (ii) any documents or extracts from documents obtained pursuant to an inspection made under subsection (2)(b) of that section are returned to the person previously having possession of those documents or previously having them under his or her control and any copies of such documents or extracts are destroyed:
 - (iii) any information derived from or based upon any such information and data or documents or extracts is destroyed:
- (b) no information and data supplied by the registered bank pursuant to subsection (2)(a) of that section, and no documents or extracts from documents obtained pursuant to an inspection made under subsection (2)(b) of that section, shall be—
- (i) admissible in evidence in any proceedings:
 - (ii) used in connection with the exercise of any power conferred by section 113 or section 117.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38N(12); 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 27

Section 109(a)(i): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 109(a)(ii): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 109(b): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 109(b)(ii): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

110 Effect of final decision that exercise of powers under section 101 or section 102 unlawful

In any case where it is declared in a final decision given in any proceedings in respect of the exercise of powers conferred by section 101 or section 102 that the exercise of any powers conferred by those sections is unlawful, to the extent to which the exercise of those powers is declared unlawful,—

- (a) the Bank shall ensure that forthwith after the decision of the court is given—
 - (i) any information or data obtained pursuant to section 102(1)(a) is destroyed:
 - (ii) any documents produced for inspection pursuant to section 102(1)(a) are returned to the person previously having possession of the documents or previously having the documents under his or her control and any copies of such documents or extracts from documents are destroyed:
 - (iii) any documents or extracts from documents obtained pursuant to an inspection made under section 102(2) are returned to the person previously having possession of those documents or previously having them under his or her control and any copies of such documents or extracts from documents are destroyed:
 - (iv) any information derived from or based upon any such information, documents, or extracts is destroyed:
- (b) no information or data obtained or documents produced for inspection pursuant to section 102(1)(a) and no documents or extracts from documents obtained pursuant to an inspection made under section 102(2) shall be—
 - (i) admissible in evidence in any proceedings:
 - (ii) used in connection with the exercise of any power conferred by section 113 or section 117.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38O(15); 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 28

Section 110(b)(ii): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Reserve Bank may give directions

Heading: replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 29 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

111 Bank may require registered bank to consult

[Repealed]

Section 111: repealed, on 21 August 2003, by section 29 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

112 Bank may give advice and assistance

[Repealed]

Section 112: repealed, on 21 August 2003, by section 29 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

113 Bank may give directions

- (1) The Bank may give a registered bank or an associated person of a registered bank a direction, in writing, if it has reasonable grounds to believe that—
 - (a) the registered bank or associated person is insolvent or is likely to become insolvent; or
 - (b) the registered bank or associated person is about to suspend payment or is unable to meet its obligations as and when they fall due; or
 - (c) the affairs of the registered bank or associated person are being conducted in a manner prejudicial to the soundness of the financial system; or
 - (d) the circumstances of the registered bank or associated person are such as to be prejudicial to the soundness of the financial system; or
 - (e) the business of the registered bank has not been, or is not being, conducted in a prudent manner; or
 - (f) any of the following persons has failed to comply with any requirement imposed by or under this Act or regulations made under this Act:
 - (i) the registered bank;
 - (ii) a director of the registered bank;
 - (iii) in the case of an overseas incorporated registered bank, its New Zealand chief executive officer; or
 - (g) any of the following persons has been convicted of an offence against this Act:
 - (i) the registered bank;
 - (ii) a director of the registered bank;
 - (iii) in the case of an overseas incorporated registered bank, its New Zealand chief executive officer; or
 - (h) the registered bank has failed to comply with a condition of its registration.
- (2) The Bank must obtain the consent of the Minister before giving a direction under this section.
- (3) A direction given under this section must state the grounds on which it is given.
- (4) The Bank may, with the consent of the Minister,—
 - (a) amend or modify a direction; or
 - (b) replace a direction with another direction; or

- (c) revoke a direction.
- (5) To avoid doubt, the Bank may exercise the power conferred by subsection (1) by giving a direction to a registered bank in respect of an associated person of that registered bank, and vice versa.

Section 113: replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 30 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

113A Scope of directions

A direction given under section 113 may require a registered bank or an associated person of a registered bank to—

- (a) consult with the Bank immediately, and from time to time, about the circumstances of the registered bank or of an associated person of the registered bank and the methods of resolving any difficulties facing the registered bank or the associated person; or
- (b) carry on business, or any part of its business, in accordance with the direction; or
- (c) cease to carry on its business, or any part of its business, in accordance with the direction; or
- (d) ensure that any officer or employee of the registered bank or associated person ceases to take part in the management or conduct of its business except with the permission of the Bank and so far as that permission extends; or
- (e) remove or replace any of the directors of an associated person of the registered bank; or
- (f) remove or replace its auditor or appoint an auditor approved by the Bank; or
- (g) take the action that is specified in the direction to address a breach of any condition of its registration; or
- (h) take the action that is specified in the direction to address any circumstances of financial difficulties; or
- (i) take any other action that may be specified in the direction.

Section 113A: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 30 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

113B Power to remove, replace, or appoint directors

- (1) This section applies if the Bank has reasonable grounds to believe that—
 - (a) any of the circumstances referred to in section 113(1) exists; and
 - (b) it is necessary to remove, replace, or appoint a director of a registered bank or of an associated person of a registered bank.
- (2) If this section applies, the Bank may—

- (a) remove or replace a director of any registered bank or of an associated person of any registered bank; or
 - (b) appoint any person as a director of any registered bank or of an associated person of any registered bank.
- (3) The Bank must—
 - (a) obtain the consent of the Minister before exercising the power conferred by subsection (2); and
 - (b) exercise that power by giving notice in writing to—
 - (i) the director or the person concerned; and
 - (ii) if applicable, the Registrar of Companies.
- (4) A notice given under subsection (3)(b)(ii) is sufficient compliance with section 159 of the Companies Act 1993 as long as the notice is accompanied by the form of consent and certificate required under section 152 of that Act.
- (5) This section has effect despite any enactment, rule of law, or the terms of the constitution of, or the instrument or contract creating, a registered bank or an associated person of a registered bank.

Section 113B: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 30 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

114 Offence to contravene directions

- (1) Every person commits an offence against this Act who, being a registered bank or associated person, without lawful justification or excuse, contravenes, or fails to comply with, a direction under section 113.
- (2) Every person commits an offence against this Act who, being an officer or employee of a registered bank or of an associated person, without lawful justification or excuse, obstructs, hinders or prevents that registered bank or associated person giving effect to any direction given under section 113.
- (3) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156AC.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38Q(11), (12); 1986 No 134 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 35

Section 114(3): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

115 Offence to disclose giving of direction

- (1) Subject to subsections (2) and (3), every person commits an offence against this Act who discloses that a direction has been given under section 113 or that a notice has been given under section 113B.
- (2) Nothing in subsection (1) applies to the disclosure or publication of the fact that a direction or notice has been given where the disclosure or publication is made—
 - (a) to any professional or financial adviser of the registered bank or associated person to which the direction or notice relates:

- (b) with the written consent of the Bank, for the purposes of the sale or other disposition, or the possible sale or other disposition, of the whole or any part of the capital, or business undertaking, of the registered bank or associated person:
- (c) by the Bank or with the written consent of the Bank,—
 - (i) to the public; or
 - (ii) to any person who has a proper interest in knowing that the direction or notice has been given.
- (3) Nothing in subsection (1) applies to the disclosure or publication of the fact that a direction has been given requiring the actions set out in section 113A(d) or section 113A(e) or section 113A(f) for the purpose of giving effect to that direction.
- (4) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156AA.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38Q(14), (15); 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 36

Section 115 heading: amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 115(1): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 115(2): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 115(2)(a): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 115(2)(c)(ii): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 115(3): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 115(4): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

116 Miscellaneous provisions with respect to directions and dispositions

- (1) A direction given under section 113 is taken to have been given on delivery to the head office, registered office, principal place of business in New Zealand, or address for service of the registered bank or associated person of the registered bank.
- (2) If the Bank has reasonable grounds to believe that 1 or more of the circumstances listed in section 113(1) exist, it may, with the consent of the Minister, by notice in writing to the parties, approve any sale or other disposition of the whole or part of the capital or business undertaking of the registered bank or associated person of the registered bank specified in the notice.
- (3) If the Bank grants an approval under subsection (2), the provisions of any enactment requiring any consent, licence, permission, or clearance or other authority do not apply as a condition of the legality or validity of the sale or other disposition.

- (4) For the purposes of this section, **address for service**, in relation to a registered bank, means the address for service specified in a disclosure statement published in accordance with section 81.

Section 116: replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 31 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Statutory management of registered banks

117 Statutory management of registered banks and associated persons

- (1) The Governor-General may, from time to time, by Order in Council, on the advice of the Minister given in accordance with a recommendation of the Bank,—
- (a) declare that—
- (i) any registered bank:
- (ii) any associated person of a registered bank—
- is subject to statutory management; and
- (b) appoint 1 or more persons as statutory manager or statutory managers of that registered bank or associated person for a specified period.
- (1A) If any question arises as to whether, on the date on which a statutory manager was appointed, an act was done or a transaction was entered into or effected before or after the appointment, that act or transaction must, in the absence of proof to the contrary, be treated as having been done or entered into or effected, as the case may be, after the appointment of the statutory manager.
- (2) If an Order in Council is made under subsection (1), every subsidiary of a registered bank declared to be subject to statutory management, except any subsidiary declared to be a subsidiary to which the order does not apply, is subject to statutory management and the appointment of a statutory manager for the specified period in respect of that registered bank also applies to those subsidiaries.
- (2A) If a registered bank acquires a subsidiary after it has been declared to be subject to statutory management under subsection (1), that subsidiary is not subject to statutory management unless a further Order in Council is made declaring that subsidiary to be subject to statutory management.
- (3) Where a registered bank or an associated person of a registered bank that is declared to be subject to statutory management or a subsidiary of a registered bank that becomes subject to statutory management under subsection (2), is incorporated outside New Zealand or is an unincorporated body having its head office or principal place of business outside New Zealand, the provisions of this Part relating to statutory management shall apply to the property, rights, assets and liabilities relating to its New Zealand business.
- (4) Every Order in Council made under subsection (1) must specify the date on which, and the time at which, the Order in Council comes into force.

- (5) The date and time as specified must not be earlier than the date on which, and the time at which, the Order in Council is made.
- (6) A person appointed under subsection (1)(b) has all the rights and powers conferred, and all the duties imposed, on a person appointed under section 101 and, without limitation, the following provisions apply, with any necessary modifications, as if that person were appointed under section 101:
- (a) section 102 (which relates to powers to carry out an investigation of the affairs of a registered bank); and
 - (b) section 103 (which sets out offences in relation to investigations); and
 - (c) section 104 (which sets out the requirements that must be complied with by a person carrying out an investigation).
- (7) Subsections (1)(a) and (2) are subject to section 139J(4).
- (8) An Order in Council under this section is secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements).

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38R(2), (3); 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 38

Legislation Act 2019 requirements for secondary legislation made under this section

Publication	PCO must publish it on the legislation website and notify it in the <i>Gazette</i>	LA19 s 69(1)(c)
Presentation	The Minister must present it to the House of Representatives, unless it relates exclusively to an individual (in which case a transitional exemption applies under Schedule 1 of the Legislation Act 2019)	LA19 s 114, Sch 1 cl 32(1)(a)
Disallowance	It may be disallowed by the House of Representatives	LA19 ss 115, 116

This note is not part of the Act.

Section 117(1)(b): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 32(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 117(1A): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 32(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 117(2): replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 32(3) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 117(2A): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 32(3) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 117(4): inserted, on 26 April 1999, by section 2 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1999 (1999 No 22).

Section 117(5): inserted, on 26 April 1999, by section 2 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1999 (1999 No 22).

Section 117(6): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 32(4) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 117(7): inserted, on 10 December 2013, by section 4 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Covered Bonds) Amendment Act 2013 (2013 No 103).

Section 117(8): inserted, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

118 Grounds on which registered bank may be declared to be subject to statutory management

- (1) The Bank must not make a recommendation under section 117 unless—
 - (a) it is satisfied on reasonable grounds that 1 or more of the circumstances listed in section 113(1)(a) to (e) exist; or
 - (b) a registered bank or an associated person of a registered bank has failed to comply with a direction given under section 113.
- (2) The Bank shall, as soon as practicable after the making of an Order in Council declaring a registered bank or associated person to be subject to statutory management, give written notice to the registered bank or associated person stating the grounds on which the recommendation made by the Bank was made.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38R(4), (6); 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 39

Section 118(1): replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 33 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

119 Advisory committee

- (1) Where an Order in Council is made under section 117 declaring a registered bank or an associated person to be subject to statutory management, the Minister may, by notice in writing to the statutory manager of that registered bank or associated person, on the recommendation of the Bank, appoint the persons specified in the recommendation as an advisory committee.
- (2) The functions of an advisory committee shall be—
 - (a) to advise the statutory manager on the conduct of the statutory management, including the exercise of the powers conferred by this Part;
 - (b) to do such other things as may be specified by the Minister, from time to time, by notice in the *Gazette*.
- (3) The members of an advisory committee shall be appointed for such period as is specified in the notice of appointment.
- (4) The Minister may, by notice in writing, on the recommendation of the Bank, extend the term of appointment of a member of an advisory committee.
- (5) The Minister may, by notice in writing, on the recommendation of the Bank, appoint a person to be an additional member of an advisory committee.
- (6) The Minister may terminate the appointment of a member of an advisory committee for inability to perform the functions of the office, bankruptcy, neglect of duty, or misconduct proved to the satisfaction of the Minister.
- (7) A member of an advisory committee may resign office by notice in writing to the Minister.
- (8) A notice under subsection (1) or subsection (5) must specify the date on which it comes into force (which date must not be earlier than the date on which the Minister signed the notice).

- (9) Every notice given under this section must be published in the *Gazette* as soon as practicable.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38S(1)–(8); 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 60

Section 119(1): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 119(4): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 119(5): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 119(6): amended, on 1 January 2002, by section 70(1) of the Human Rights Amendment Act 2001 (2001 No 96).

Section 119(8): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 119(9): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

120 Statutory manager to comply with directions of Bank

Subject to section 142, every statutory manager of a registered bank shall comply with any directions given in writing by the Bank relating to the exercise of the powers of that statutory manager under this Part.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38U; 1986 No 131 s 10

121 Considerations affecting exercise of powers by statutory manager

- (1) In exercising the powers conferred by this Part a statutory manager of a registered bank shall have regard to—
- (a) the need to maintain public confidence in the operation and soundness of the financial system:
 - (b) the need to avoid significant damage to the financial system:
 - (c) to the extent not inconsistent with the considerations referred to in paragraphs (a) and (b), the need to resolve as quickly as possible the difficulties of that registered bank:
 - (d) to the extent not inconsistent with the considerations referred to in paragraphs (a), (b) and (c), preserving the position of creditors and maintaining the ranking of claims of creditors:
 - (e) the advice of the Bank.
- (2) Every statutory manager shall—
- (a) consult with the Bank, to the extent required by the Bank, as to the exercise of those powers:
 - (b) provide the reports that the Bank may require as to the state of the affairs, business, and statutory management of the registered bank to persons specified by the Bank (including, but not limited to, the Bank) in the form and with the frequency that the Bank may require:

- (c) provide the information that an advisory committee appointed under section 119 may reasonably require as to the affairs, business, and statutory management of the registered bank.
- (3) A statutory manager may refuse to supply information to an advisory committee under subsection (2)(c) if the Bank considers that the refusal is appropriate and gives its written approval to the statutory manager accordingly.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38T; 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 41

Section 121(2)(b): replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 34(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 121(2)(c): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 34(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 121(3): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 34(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

121A Statutory manager to avoid actions likely to have detrimental effect

- (1) A statutory manager who has reasonable cause to believe that an action he or she proposes to take is an action that is likely to have a detrimental effect on financial system stability in Australia must—
 - (a) notify the Bank as soon as practicable; and
 - (b) obtain the Bank's written consent before taking that action.
- (2) The statutory manager is not required to comply with subsection (1) if the statutory manager is satisfied that it is not reasonably practicable to do so in the circumstances, having regard to urgency or other similar constraint.
- (3) Where the Bank receives a notification under subsection (1), it must provide details of the notification to every prescribed Australian financial authority it considers to be relevant in the circumstances before granting written consent to the statutory manager.
- (4) The Bank is not required to comply with subsection (3) if the Bank is satisfied that it is not reasonably practicable to do so in the circumstances, having regard to urgency or other similar constraint.
- (5) No performance of a function or duty or exercise of a power is invalid by reason only of a failure to comply with the provisions of this section.
- (6) A statutory manager may consult a prescribed Australian financial authority about whether an action the statutory manager proposes to take is likely to have a detrimental effect on financial system stability in Australia.

Section 121A: inserted, on 15 December 2006, by section 8 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2006 (2006 No 51).

122 Moratorium

- (1) Where a registered bank is declared under section 117 to be subject to statutory management, no person shall—

- (a) commence or continue any action or other proceedings, including proceedings by way of counterclaim, against that registered bank:
 - (b) issue any execution, attach any debt, or otherwise enforce or seek to enforce any judgment or order obtained in respect of that registered bank:
 - (c) take any steps to put that registered bank into liquidation or voluntary administration:
 - (d) enter into possession, sell, or appoint a receiver of the property of that registered bank or property in respect of which the registered bank has an equity of redemption:
 - (e) exercise or continue any power or rights under, or in pursuance of, any mortgage, charge, debenture, instrument, or other security over the property of that registered bank:
 - (f) claim or recover, pursuant to any retention of title clause, hire purchase agreement, mortgage, lease, or security, any property in the possession of the registered bank:
 - (g) determine or forfeit any tenancy, retake or re-enter any premises, or exercise or continue any power or rights under or in pursuance of any lease, against that registered bank:
 - (h) exercise any right of set-off against that registered bank.
- (2) Notwithstanding subsection (1), an action or proceeding may be commenced or continued against a registered bank for the purpose of determining whether any right or liability exists if the leave of the statutory manager or the High Court is first obtained.
- (3) Notwithstanding subsection (1), a statutory manager may waive the application in whole or in part of that subsection (except paragraph (c)) to any creditor or class of creditors in respect of the whole or part of any claim of, or security held by, that creditor or class of creditors.
- (4) Subject to this Act, nothing in subsection (1) affects the existence of any security over the property of any registered bank or its priority over other debts.
- (5) Nothing in subsection (1)(a), (b), and (d) to (h) limits or prevents any person from taking any of the actions specified in those paragraphs in relation to an obligation incurred or a right granted under a deed, instrument, trust, or contract entered into by a registered bank after the date on which, and the time at which, that registered bank was declared to be subject to statutory management.
- (6) *[Repealed]*
- (7) In the case of a netting agreement to which sections 310A to 310O of the Companies Act 1993 or sections 255 to 263 of the Insolvency Act 2006 apply,—

- (a) nothing in subsection (1)(h) applies to any right of set-off provided for in the netting agreement; and
 - (b) nothing in subsection (1) limits or prevents the exercise of any of the following rights under the netting agreement:
 - (i) the termination, in accordance with the netting agreement, of all or any transactions that are subject to the netting agreement by reason of the occurrence of an event specified in the netting agreement, being an event (including the appointment of a statutory manager) occurring not later than the commencement of statutory management; or
 - (ii) the taking of an account, in accordance with the netting agreement, of all money due between the parties to the netting agreement in respect of transactions affected by the termination; and
 - (c) nothing in subsection (1) limits or prevents the exercise of any right referred to in paragraphs (d) to (f) of that subsection in respect of any property of that registered bank to the extent that the right is exercised to enforce, or to assist in enforcing, the due performance, by that registered bank, of obligations entered into by that registered bank under a recognised multilateral netting agreement (within the meaning of section 310A of the Companies Act 1993).
- (8) In the case of netting under the rules of a designated settlement system,—
 - (a) nothing in subsection (1) limits or prevents the exercise of any rights relating to the calculation of a netted balance under those rules; and
 - (b) nothing in subsection (1) limits or prevents the exercise of any right referred to in paragraphs (d) to (f) of that subsection in respect of any property of that registered bank if the right that is exercised—
 - (i) is provided under the rules of the designated settlement system; and
 - (ii) has been granted to secure, or to assist in securing, the due performance, by that registered bank, of obligations entered into by that registered bank under those rules.
- (9) For the purpose of subsection (8), **netted balance** and **netting** have the meanings set out in section 156L.
- (9A) Nothing in subsection (1) limits or prevents the exercise of any rights to enforce a security interest over collateral to the extent that the security interest secures payment or performance of an obligation under or in relation to a qualifying derivative if—
 - (a) the counterparties to the derivative are—
 - (i) 2 qualifying counterparties; or
 - (ii) a qualifying counterparty and an overseas person; and

- (b) before the exercise of the rights, the collateral is transferred or otherwise dealt with so as to be in the possession or under the control of—
 - (i) the enforcing counterparty; or
 - (ii) another person (who is not the grantor) on behalf of the enforcing counterparty, under the terms of an arrangement evidenced in writing; and
 - (c) the rights are exercised after the specified time.
- (9B) *See* sections 122A to 122E for definitions and other matters relating to subsection (9A).
- (10) Subsection (1) is subject to section 139J(1) to (3).

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38V; 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 42

Section 122(1)(c): replaced, on 1 July 1994, by section 2 of the Company Law Reform (Transitional Provisions) Act 1994 (1994 No 16).

Section 122(1)(c): amended, on 1 November 2007, by section 41 of the Companies Amendment Act 2006 (2006 No 56).

Section 122(1)(d): amended, on 1 January 2008, by section 364(1) of the Property Law Act 2007 (2007 No 91).

Section 122(1)(g): amended, on 1 January 2008, by section 364(1) of the Property Law Act 2007 (2007 No 91).

Section 122(5): replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 35(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 122(6): repealed, on 21 August 2003, by section 35(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 122(7): inserted, on 26 April 1999, by section 3(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1999 (1999 No 22).

Section 122(7): amended, on 3 December 2007, by section 445 of the Insolvency Act 2006 (2006 No 55).

Section 122(7)(c): replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 35(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 122(8): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 35(3) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 122(8): amended, on 24 November 2009, by section 5 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

Section 122(8)(b)(i): amended, on 24 November 2009, by section 5 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

Section 122(9): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 35(3) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 122(9A): inserted, on 31 August 2019, by section 4 of the Financial Markets (Derivatives Margin and Benchmarking) Reform Amendment Act 2019 (2019 No 46).

Section 122(9B): inserted, on 31 August 2019, by section 4 of the Financial Markets (Derivatives Margin and Benchmarking) Reform Amendment Act 2019 (2019 No 46).

Section 122(10): inserted, on 10 December 2013, by section 5 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Covered Bonds) Amendment Act 2013 (2013 No 103).

122A Definitions of terms relating to qualifying derivatives

(1) For the purposes of sections 122(9A), 122B, 122C, 122D, and 122E,—

collateral means any 1 or more of the following:

- (a) a financial product:
- (b) gold, silver, or platinum:
- (c) a document of title, a chattel paper, an investment security, money, a negotiable instrument, or an intangible (with terms and expressions used in this paragraph having the same meanings as in section 16(1) of the Personal Property Securities Act 1999):
- (d) if a person (an **intermediary**) maintains an account to which interests in property, or rights to payment or delivery of property, of a kind specified in any of paragraphs (a) to (c) may be credited or debited, the rights of a person in whose name the intermediary maintains the account, to the extent that those rights relate to the interests in that property or the rights to payment or delivery of that property:
- (e) the proceeds of property of a kind specified in any of paragraphs (a) to (d)

default time means the close of the day after the date on which the statutory management commenced

derivative means a derivative within the meaning of section 8(4) of the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013 (but disregarding any declaration referred to in section 8(5)(b) of that Act)

intermediated collateral means collateral of the kind referred to in paragraph (d) of the definition of collateral in this subsection

overseas person means—

- (a) a natural person who is not ordinarily resident in New Zealand; or
- (b) an entity (within the meaning of section 6(1) of the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013) that is incorporated or established outside New Zealand

possession includes possession within the meaning of section 18 of the Personal Property Securities Act 1999 (subject to section 122B and regulations made under section 173(1)(fc) and (fd))

proceeds has the same meaning as in section 16(1) of the Personal Property Securities Act 1999 but applied with all necessary modifications, including treating references to collateral in the definition in that section as references to property of a kind specified in any of paragraphs (a) to (d) of the definition of collateral in this subsection

qualifying counterparty means—

- (a) a registered bank; or

- (b) the Accident Compensation Corporation (as continued by section 259 of the Accident Compensation Act 2001); or
- (c) the Guardians of New Zealand Superannuation established under section 48 of the New Zealand Superannuation and Retirement Income Act 2001; or
- (d) a specified operator; or
- (e) any prescribed entity; or
- (f) any other entity of a prescribed class

qualifying derivative, in relation to enforcing a security interest over collateral, means a derivative to which both of the following apply:

- (a) the derivative is subject to—
 - (i) a netting agreement to which sections 310A to 310O of the Companies Act 1993 or sections 255 to 263 of the Insolvency Act 2006 apply; or
 - (ii) netting under the rules of a designated settlement system; and
- (b) the enforcing counterparty's interest in the collateral is evidenced in writing

security interest has the same meaning as in section 17 of the Personal Property Securities Act 1999

specified time means—

- (a) the default time; or
 - (b) an earlier or a later time specified by the Bank in a notice issued under section 122C.
- (2) For the purposes of the definition of overseas person, a natural person is **ordinarily resident in New Zealand** if that person—
- (a) is domiciled in New Zealand; or
 - (b) is living in New Zealand and the place where that person usually lives, and has been living for the immediately preceding 12 months, is in New Zealand, whether or not that person has on occasions been away from New Zealand during that 12-month period.

Section 122A: inserted, on 31 August 2019, by section 5 of the Financial Markets (Derivatives Margin and Benchmarking) Reform Amendment Act 2019 (2019 No 46).

122B Matters relating to possession or control of collateral

- (1) For the purposes of section 122(9A)(b),—
- (a) collateral must be taken not to be in the possession or under the control of the enforcing counterparty if,—
 - (i) under the security interest, the grantor is free to deal with the collateral in the ordinary course of business until the enforcing coun-

- terparty's interest in the collateral becomes fixed and enforceable;
or
- (ii) regulations made under section 173(1)(fc) so provide:
- (b) intermediated collateral must be taken to be in the possession of the enforcing counterparty if that counterparty is the person in whose name the intermediary maintains the account:
 - (c) intermediated collateral must be taken to be under the control of the enforcing counterparty if subsection (3) applies:
 - (d) collateral must be taken to be in the possession or under the control of the enforcing counterparty if regulations made under section 173(1)(fc) so provide.
- (2) Subsection (1)(a)(i) applies even if the enforcing counterparty's interest in the collateral becomes fixed and enforceable before the enforcement of the security interest over that collateral.
 - (3) For the purposes of subsection (1)(c), this subsection applies if—
 - (a) the intermediary is not the grantor (but may be the enforcing counterparty or any other person); and
 - (b) there is an agreement in force between the intermediary and 1 or more other persons, 1 of which is the enforcing counterparty or the grantor; and
 - (c) the agreement has 1 or more of the following effects:
 - (i) the person in whose name the intermediary maintains the account is not able to transfer or otherwise deal with the collateral:
 - (ii) the intermediary must not comply with instructions given by the grantor in relation to the collateral without seeking the consent of the enforcing counterparty (or a person who has agreed to act on the instructions of the enforcing counterparty):
 - (iii) the intermediary must comply, or must comply in 1 or more specified circumstances, with instructions (including instructions to debit the account) given by the enforcing counterparty in relation to the collateral without seeking the consent of the grantor (or any person who has agreed to act on the instructions of the grantor).
 - (4) Subsections (1)(a)(i), (b), and (c), (2), and (3) and the definition of possession in section 122A(1) are subject to regulations made under section 173(1)(fc) and (fd).
 - (5) The fact that a grantor retains a right of 1 or more of the following kinds does not by itself stop section 122(9A)(b) from being satisfied:
 - (a) a right to receive and withdraw income in relation to the collateral:
 - (b) a right to receive notices in relation to the collateral:
 - (c) a right to vote in relation to the collateral:

- (d) a right to substitute other collateral that the parties agree is of equivalent value for the collateral:
- (e) a right to withdraw excess collateral:
- (f) a right to determine the value of collateral.

Section 122B: inserted, on 31 August 2019, by section 5 of the Financial Markets (Derivatives Margin and Benchmarking) Reform Amendment Act 2019 (2019 No 46).

122C Bank may reduce or extend stay on exercise of rights to enforce security interest over collateral

- (1) This section and section 122D apply for the purposes of section 122(9A) in respect of a registered bank that is in statutory management (A).
- (2) The Reserve Bank may, before the default time, issue a notice that states that the rights referred to in section 122(9A) may only be exercised on and after a time specified in the notice.
- (3) The time that is specified may be—
 - (a) before the default time; or
 - (b) after the default time if the Bank is satisfied of all of the matters set out in section 122D.
- (4) The notice may relate to all rights referred to in section 122(9A) in respect of A's property or to a class or classes of those rights.
- (5) Despite section 140(2)(b), this section applies to an associated person or a subsidiary of a registered bank only if the associated person or subsidiary is itself a registered bank.

Section 122C: inserted, on 31 August 2019, by section 5 of the Financial Markets (Derivatives Margin and Benchmarking) Reform Amendment Act 2019 (2019 No 46).

122D Matters Bank must be satisfied of under section 122C(3)(b)

The matters referred to in section 122C(3)(b) are that—

- (a) A is able to meet all of the following liabilities as and when those liabilities become due and payable:
 - (i) A's liabilities under all netting agreements to which sections 310A to 310O of the Companies Act 1993 or sections 255 to 263 of the Insolvency Act 2006 apply:
 - (ii) A's liabilities in respect of security interests over collateral to the extent that the security interests secure payment or performance of obligations under or in relation to qualifying derivatives:
 - (iii) A's liabilities that are subject to netting under the rules of a designated settlement system; and
- (b) A is able to pay its debts as they become due in the normal course of business; and
- (c) either—

- (i) A complies with the minimum capital requirements (if any) to which it is subject under conditions imposed under section 74; or
- (ii) there are satisfactory arrangements in place to ensure that A meets all of its liabilities referred to in paragraph (a) as and when those liabilities become due and payable and those arrangements will remain in place until A complies with the requirements referred to in subparagraph (i) or the statutory management is terminated, whichever occurs first.

Section 122D: inserted, on 31 August 2019, by section 5 of the Financial Markets (Derivatives Margin and Benchmarking) Reform Amendment Act 2019 (2019 No 46).

122E Publication and status of notice under section 122C

- (1) The Bank must, as soon as practicable,—
 - (a) publish any notice issued under section 122C on an Internet site maintained by, or on behalf of, the Bank; and
 - (b) notify the issue of the notice in the *Gazette*.
- (2) The notice may take effect at any time after it is published under subsection (1)(a).
- (3) *[Repealed]*
- (4) The notice cannot be varied or revoked.

Section 122E: inserted, on 31 August 2019, by section 5 of the Financial Markets (Derivatives Margin and Benchmarking) Reform Amendment Act 2019 (2019 No 46).

Section 122E(3): repealed, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

123 Statutory manager may incorporate company under Companies Act 1993 to acquire business of branch of foreign institution

- (1) Where a registered bank, which is a branch of a body corporate incorporated outside New Zealand or, as the case may be, any unincorporated body having its head office or principal place of business outside New Zealand, is declared to be subject to statutory management, the statutory manager may—
 - (a) form and register a body corporate under the Companies Act 1993 or any other Act:
 - (b) subscribe for or acquire, as trustee for that body corporate or unincorporated body, as the case may be, all or any of the shares of the body corporate:
 - (c) allot or issue all or any of the shares in that body corporate as fully or partly paid, as the case may be, up to the value, after deducting the value of any liabilities vested, of any property, rights, and assets vested in that body corporate pursuant to subsection (2).
- (2) The Governor-General may, by Order in Council, on the advice of the Minister, given in accordance with a recommendation of the Bank, declare that the

whole or any part of any property, rights, assets, and liabilities of any such branch relating to the business carried on by that branch shall vest in that body corporate on a date specified in the order and the property, rights, assets, and liabilities shall vest in that body corporate on the date specified.

- (3) Nothing in subsection (2) shall reduce, extinguish, or affect any obligation or liability of a body corporate incorporated outside New Zealand or, as the case may be, an unincorporated body having its head office or principal place of business outside New Zealand.
- (4) Every body corporate formed and registered under subsection (1) shall, for the purposes of this Part, be deemed to be a registered bank subject to statutory management as if that body corporate had been declared to be subject to statutory management pursuant to section 117, and the statutory manager of it, in its capacity as a branch, shall be the statutory manager of that body corporate as if that statutory manager had been appointed pursuant to that section and the provisions of this Part shall apply accordingly.
- (5) An Order in Council under subsection (2) is secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements).

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38W(1), (3)–(5); 1986 No 131 s 10

Legislation Act 2019 requirements for secondary legislation made under this section

Publication	PCO must publish it on the legislation website and notify it in the <i>Gazette</i>	LA19 s 69(1)(c)
Presentation	The Minister must present it to the House of Representatives	LA19 s 114, Sch 1 cl 32(1)(a)
Disallowance	It may be disallowed by the House of Representatives	LA19 ss 115, 116

This note is not part of the Act.

Section 123 heading: amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 123(1)(a): amended, on 1 July 1994, by section 2 of the Company Law Reform (Transitional Provisions) Act 1994 (1994 No 16).

Section 123(1)(b): replaced, on 1 July 1994, by section 2 of the Company Law Reform (Transitional Provisions) Act 1994 (1994 No 16).

Section 123(1)(c): amended, on 1 July 1994, by section 2 of the Company Law Reform (Transitional Provisions) Act 1994 (1994 No 16).

Section 123(5): inserted, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

124 Vesting of property subject to security

- (1) An order may be made under section 123 vesting any property, rights, and assets of a branch in a body corporate formed and registered pursuant to that section notwithstanding the existence, or the terms and conditions, of any security over that property, or those rights or assets, in favour of any other person.
- (2) Any property, rights or assets which are declared to vest pursuant to an order made under that section in the body corporate, being property, rights or assets

subject to a security in favour of any other person, shall continue to be subject to that security.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38W(6), (7); 1986 No 131 s 10

125 Proof of vesting

- (1) Neither the Registrar of Deeds nor the Registrar-General of Land, or any other person charged with the keeping of any books or registers, shall be obliged solely by reason of section 123 to change the name of any body corporate or unincorporated body referred to in that section to that of any company formed and registered pursuant to that section in those books or registers or in any document.
- (2) The presentation to any Registrar or other person of any instrument, whether or not comprising an instrument of transfer, by the company—
 - (a) executed or purporting to be executed by the company; and
 - (b) relating to any property held before the date specified in an Order in Council made pursuant to that section by that body corporate or unincorporated body; and
 - (c) containing a recital that the property has become vested in the company, by virtue of the provisions of that section—

shall, in the absence of evidence to the contrary, be sufficient proof that the property is vested in the company.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38W(8), (9); 1986 No 131 s 10

Section 125(1): amended, on 12 November 2018, by section 250 of the Land Transfer Act 2017 (2017 No 30).

126 Prohibition against removal of assets

- (1) Except with the consent of the statutory manager, no person shall transfer or remove from New Zealand any property or assets of a registered bank which is declared to be subject to statutory management.
- (2) A person commits an offence if the person contravenes subsection (1).
- (2A) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156AC.
- (3) Nothing in subsection (2) shall prevent the issue of an injunction or the making of any order to prevent any property or assets being removed from New Zealand.
- (4) Subsection (1) is subject to section 139J(1) to (3).

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38X; 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 43

Section 126(2): replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 126(2A): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 126(4): inserted, on 10 December 2013, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Covered Bonds) Amendment Act 2013 (2013 No 103).

127 Statutory manager may suspend payment of money owing

- (1) The statutory manager of a registered bank may, despite the terms of any contract,—
 - (a) suspend in whole or in part the repayment of any deposit, or the payment of any debt, or the discharge of any obligation, to any person; and
 - (b) cancel the obligation to provide funding to any person.
- (2) A suspension or cancellation by a statutory manager under subsection (1) does not constitute a breach or repudiation of any contract entered into by the registered bank with any person.
- (3) Nothing in subsection (1) shall authorise the suspension by the statutory manager of the repayment of any deposit, or the payment of any debt, or the discharge of any obligation, or the cancellation by the statutory manager of any obligation to provide funding, to any person where the obligation to repay the deposit, or to pay the debt, or the obligation, was incurred by the registered bank, or by the statutory manager, after the date upon which, and the time at which, the registered bank became subject to statutory management.
- (4) Nothing in subsection (1) authorises the suspension by the statutory manager of the payment of any amount that would be included in the calculation of a netted balance in accordance with section 310C of the Companies Act 1993 or section 257 of the Insolvency Act 2006 or section 156R, as the case may be. However, subsection (1) applies to the payment of the netted balance.
- (5) Subsection (1) is subject to section 139J(1) to (3).

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38Y; 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 44

Section 127(1): replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 36(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 127(2): replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 36(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 127(3): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 36(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 127(3): amended, on 26 April 1999, by section 4(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1999 (1999 No 22).

Section 127(4): inserted, on 26 April 1999, by section 4(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1999 (1999 No 22).

Section 127(4): amended, on 3 December 2007, by section 445 of the Insolvency Act 2006 (2006 No 55).

Section 127(4): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 36(3) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 127(5): inserted, on 10 December 2013, by section 7 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Covered Bonds) Amendment Act 2013 (2013 No 103).

128 Management of registered bank to vest in statutory manager

- (1) Subject to this Part, where a registered bank is declared to be subject to statutory management, the management of that registered bank shall, on and after

the date, and at and from the time, specified in the order, vest in the statutory manager.

- (2) Where a registered bank is declared to be subject to statutory management, it shall not be lawful or competent for any director, manager, or other person to be engaged in the management or conduct of its business, or to act as an officer or as the agent, or servant, of the registered bank, except with the permission of the statutory manager and so far as that permission extends.
- (3) Subsection (2) is subject to section 139J(1) to (3).

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38Z; 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 45

Section 128(1): amended, on 26 April 1999, by section 5 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1999 (1999 No 22).

Section 128(3): inserted, on 10 December 2013, by section 8 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Covered Bonds) Amendment Act 2013 (2013 No 103).

129 Powers of statutory manager

- (1) Subject to this Part, a statutory manager shall have all such powers, rights, and authorities as may be necessary for the purposes of this Part.
- (2) Without limiting subsection (1), a statutory manager has, and may exercise,—
- (a) all the powers, rights, and privileges that the registered bank has under any contract or otherwise:
 - (b) in the case of a body corporate, all the powers of the members in general meeting and the board of directors of that body corporate:
 - (c) in the case of a partnership, all the powers exercisable by a partner or partners.
- (3) Without limiting subsection (1), a statutory manager has, and may exercise, all of the powers conferred on a liquidator of a company by section 269 of the Companies Act 1993 in the same manner as if the statutory manager was the liquidator of a company in liquidation under that Act, and all the provisions of that section shall apply in respect of the disclaimer of any property of the registered bank as if that property was property of a company to which that section applied.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38AB; 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 46

Section 129(3): replaced, on 1 July 1994, by section 2 of the Company Law Reform (Transitional Provisions) Act 1994 (1994 No 16).

130 Statutory manager empowered to carry on business of registered bank

Subject to this Part, a statutory manager of a registered bank may carry on all or any part of the business of the registered bank and has, and may exercise, in relation to the registered bank, all such powers, rights, and authorities as may be necessary to carry on that business.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38AC; 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 47

131 Statutory manager may pay creditors and compromise claims

Subject to this Part, a statutory manager of a registered bank shall, for the purposes of carrying on the business of the registered bank, have power to—

- (a) pay, in whole or in part, any creditor or class of creditors of the registered bank:
- (b) make any compromise or arrangement with any creditor, or person claiming to be a creditor, of the registered bank:
- (c) compromise all calls, debts and claims subsisting, or supposed to subsist, between the registered bank and any other person, and all questions relating to the assets of the registered bank, and give a complete or partial discharge.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38AD; 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 48

132 Sale of registered bank

- (1) Subject to this Part, the statutory manager of a registered bank may sell or otherwise dispose of the whole or any part of the business undertaking of the registered bank to such person and upon such terms and conditions as the statutory manager thinks fit.
- (2) Without limiting any other powers of the statutory manager, for the purposes of subsection (1), the statutory manager shall have power to—
 - (a) form and register a body corporate under the Companies Act 1993 or any other Act:
 - (b) subscribe for or acquire all or any of the shares of that body corporate:
 - (c) transfer to that body corporate the whole or any part of the business undertaking of the registered bank:
 - (d) allot or issue all or any of the shares in that body corporate to any person, credited as fully or partly paid, as the case may be, up to the value of the business undertaking transferred to that body corporate:
 - (e) sell all or any of the shares, or the whole or any part of the business undertaking, of that body corporate to such person and upon such terms and conditions as the statutory manager thinks fit.
- (3) The statutory manager shall not sell or otherwise dispose of—
 - (a) the whole or any substantial part of the business undertaking of a registered bank pursuant to subsection (1):
 - (b) any of the shares of any body corporate formed and registered pursuant to subsection (2)(a):
 - (c) the whole or any substantial part of the business undertaking of any body corporate formed and registered pursuant to subsection (2)(a),—

unless the statutory manager has consulted with the Bank and the Bank, with the consent of the Minister, has given approval in writing to the sale or other disposition and the terms and conditions of it.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38AE(1)–(3); 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 50(1), (2)

Section 132(2)(a): amended, on 1 July 1994, by section 2 of the Company Law Reform (Transitional Provisions) Act 1994 (1994 No 16).

Section 132(2)(b): amended, on 1 July 1994, by section 2 of the Company Law Reform (Transitional Provisions) Act 1994 (1994 No 16).

Section 132(2)(d): amended, on 1 July 1994, by section 2 of the Company Law Reform (Transitional Provisions) Act 1994 (1994 No 16).

133 Consents not required under other Acts

The provisions of any enactment or agreement requiring any consent, licence, permission, clearance or other authority shall not have any application in respect of—

- (a) the sale or other disposition of the whole or any part of the business undertaking of a registered bank pursuant to section 132(1);
- (b) the sale or other disposition pursuant to section 132(2)(e) of any of the shares of any body corporate formed and registered pursuant to subsection (2)(a) of that section;
- (c) the sale or other disposition pursuant to section 132(2)(e) of the whole or any part of the business undertaking of that body corporate—

being a sale or disposition to which the Bank has, with the consent of the Minister, given its approval under section 132(3).

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38AE(4); 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 50(3)

134 Sale of property or assets subject to a security

- (1) A statutory manager may—

- (a) sell or otherwise dispose of any property or assets of a registered bank pursuant to section 132(1); or
- (b) sell or otherwise dispose of any property or assets of a registered bank to any body corporate formed and registered pursuant to section 132(2)(a); or
- (c) sell or otherwise dispose of any shares, or property or assets, of a body corporate formed and registered pursuant to section 132(2)(a)—

notwithstanding the existence, or the terms and conditions, of any security over the property or those assets in favour of any other person.

- (2) If the statutory manager of a registered bank sells or otherwise disposes of any property or assets of that bank under section 132(1), being property or assets subject to a security interest, other than a security interest of the kind described in subsection (6), the person entitled to the security interest must be paid out of the proceeds of sale or other disposition in priority to all other claims other

than the costs of the statutory manager in selling or disposing of the property or assets.

- (3) Where a statutory manager of a registered bank sells or otherwise disposes of any property or assets of that registered bank to any body corporate formed and registered pursuant to section 132(2)(a), being property or assets subject to a security in favour of any other person, the property or those assets shall continue to be subject to that security.
- (4) If a statutory manager of a registered bank sells or otherwise disposes of any shares in a body corporate formed and registered under section 132(2)(a), any property or assets of which are subject to a security interest, other than a security interest of the kind described in subsection (6), the person entitled to the security interest must be paid out of the proceeds of sale or other disposition in priority to all other claims other than the costs of the statutory manager in selling or disposing of the shares.
- (5) If a statutory manager of a registered bank sells or otherwise disposes of any property or assets of a body corporate formed and registered under section 132(2)(a), being property or assets subject to security interest, other than a security interest of the kind described in subsection (6), the person entitled to the security interest must be paid out of the proceeds of sale or other disposition in priority to all other claims other than the costs of the statutory manager in selling or disposing of the property or assets.
- (6) The kind of security interest referred to in this section is a security interest that—
 - (a) is over all or any part of the bank's or body corporate's (as the case may be) accounts receivable and inventory or all or any part of either of them; and
 - (b) is not a purchase money security interest that has been perfected at the time specified in section 74 of the Personal Property Securities Act 1999; and
 - (c) is not a security interest that has been perfected under the Personal Property Securities Act 1999 at the time the registered bank was declared to be subject to statutory management and that arises from the transfer of an account receivable for which new value is provided by the transferee for the acquisition of that account receivable (whether or not the transfer of the account receivable secures payment or performance of an obligation); and
 - (d) is not a security interest referred to in subsection (8).
- (7) In this section, **account receivable**, **inventory**, **new value**, **purchase money security interest**, **proceeds**, and **security interest** have the same meanings as in the Personal Property Securities Act 1999.
- (8) For the purposes of subsection (6)(d), the security interest is a security interest over accounts receivable, inventory, or both to the extent that the security inter-

est secures payment or performance of an obligation under or in relation to a qualifying derivative and—

- (a) the counterparties to the derivative are—
 - (i) 2 qualifying counterparties; or
 - (ii) a qualifying counterparty and an overseas person; and
 - (b) before the exercise of rights to enforce the security interest, the collateral is transferred or otherwise dealt with so as to be in the possession or under the control of—
 - (i) the enforcing counterparty; or
 - (ii) another person (who is not the grantor) on behalf of the enforcing counterparty, under the terms of an arrangement evidenced in writing.
- (9) Terms and expressions defined in section 122A and used in subsection (8) have in that subsection the same meanings as in that section.
- (10) Section 122B applies with all necessary modifications for the purposes of subsection (8)(b) (and those modifications include treating references to section 122(9A)(b) as references to subsection (8)(b) of this section).

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38AE(5)–(9); 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 51

Section 134(2): replaced, on 1 May 2002, by section 191(1) of the Personal Property Securities Act 1999 (1999 No 126).

Section 134(4): replaced, on 1 May 2002, by section 191(1) of the Personal Property Securities Act 1999 (1999 No 126).

Section 134(5): replaced, on 1 May 2002, by section 191(1) of the Personal Property Securities Act 1999 (1999 No 126).

Section 134(6): inserted, on 1 May 2002, by section 191(1) of the Personal Property Securities Act 1999 (1999 No 126).

Section 134(6)(b): amended, on 3 December 2007, by section 445 of the Insolvency Act 2006 (2006 No 55).

Section 134(6)(c): amended, on 3 December 2007, by section 445 of the Insolvency Act 2006 (2006 No 55).

Section 134(6)(d): inserted, on 31 August 2019, by section 6(1) of the Financial Markets (Derivatives Margin and Benchmarking) Reform Amendment Act 2019 (2019 No 46).

Section 134(7): inserted, on 1 May 2002, by section 191(1) of the Personal Property Securities Act 1999 (1999 No 126).

Section 134(8): inserted, on 31 August 2019, by section 6(2) of the Financial Markets (Derivatives Margin and Benchmarking) Reform Amendment Act 2019 (2019 No 46).

Section 134(9): inserted, on 31 August 2019, by section 6(2) of the Financial Markets (Derivatives Margin and Benchmarking) Reform Amendment Act 2019 (2019 No 46).

Section 134(10): inserted, on 31 August 2019, by section 6(2) of the Financial Markets (Derivatives Margin and Benchmarking) Reform Amendment Act 2019 (2019 No 46).

135 Proof of transactions

- (1) The presentation to any Registrar of Deeds, or the Registrar-General of Land, or any other person charged with the keeping of any books or registers, of any

instrument transferring or otherwise disposing of any property or assets of a registered bank or any shares in, or property or assets of, any company incorporated pursuant to section 132(2)(a)—

- (a) executed or purporting to be executed by or on behalf of the registered bank or company; and
- (b) containing a recital that the transfer or other disposition of the property or assets of the registered bank, or the shares in, or property or assets of, the company, is made pursuant to section 132—

shall, in the absence of evidence to the contrary, be sufficient proof that the transfer or other disposition is made under the authority of that section.

- (2) The presentation to any Registrar of Deeds, or the Registrar-General of Land, or any other person charged with the keeping of any books or registers of a certificate signed by the statutory manager that the amount secured by a charge over any property or assets of a registered bank or any company formed and registered pursuant to section 132(2)(a) has been paid shall, in the absence of evidence to the contrary, be sufficient proof that the amount secured by the charge has been repaid.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38AE(10), (11); 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 72

Section 135(1): amended, on 12 November 2018, by section 250 of the Land Transfer Act 2017 (2017 No 30).

Section 135(2): amended, on 12 November 2018, by section 250 of the Land Transfer Act 2017 (2017 No 30).

136 Liquidation of registered banks

- (1) Subject to this Part, a statutory manager of a registered bank may, with the prior approval of the Bank,—
 - (a) in the case of a registered bank which may be put into liquidation under the Companies Act 1993, apply under that Act to put the registered bank into liquidation:
 - (b) in the case of a registered bank which is an individual, petition under the Insolvency Act 2006 to have that registered bank declared bankrupt:
 - (c) in the case of a registered bank constituted under any other Act, take such steps as are provided for in that Act for the winding up, liquidation, or dissolution of that registered bank.
- (2) The Governor-General may, by Order in Council, on the advice of the Minister given in accordance with a recommendation of a statutory manager of a registered bank, not being a registered bank referred to in subsection (1), order that the registered bank to which the recommendation relates shall be wound up in such manner as may be specified in the order and, in any such case, the registered bank shall be wound up in the manner specified.
- (3) A statutory manager shall not make a recommendation under subsection (2) without the prior approval of the Bank.

- (4) Nothing in this section limits or affects any other enactment which provides for the winding up, liquidation, or dissolution of any body corporate or any class of body corporate.
- (5) An Order in Council under subsection (2) is secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements).

Legislation Act 2019 requirements for secondary legislation made under this section

Publication	PCO must publish it on the legislation website and notify it in the <i>Gazette</i>	LA19 s 69(1)(c)
Presentation	The Minister must present it to the House of Representatives	LA19 s 114, Sch 1 cl 32(1)(a)
Disallowance	It may be disallowed by the House of Representatives	LA19 ss 115, 116

This note is not part of the Act.

Section 136: replaced, on 1 July 1994, by section 2 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1993 (1993 No 118).

Section 136(1)(a): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 136(1)(b): amended, on 3 December 2007, by section 445 of the Insolvency Act 2006 (2006 No 55).

Section 136(5): inserted, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

137 Provisions applying where liabilities included in sale

- (1) Where all or any part of any liability of a registered bank is included in the sale or other disposition of the business undertaking of that registered bank, or any part of it, pursuant to section 132—
 - (a) the registered bank shall, as from the date of such sale or other disposition, be relieved from all its obligations in respect of that liability, or part of it; and
 - (b) the person entitled to performance in respect of that liability shall be entitled to enforce performance of that liability or part of it against the person to whom the business undertaking is sold or otherwise disposed of in the same manner and to the same extent as that person was entitled to enforce performance against the registered bank; and
 - (c) the inclusion of part of a liability shall not relieve the registered bank from any obligation in respect of any part of the liability not included in the sale or other disposition.
- (2) Where all or any part of any liability of a body corporate formed and registered under section 123(1), or all or any part of any liability relating to the business carried on by a branch of any body corporate incorporated outside New Zealand or, as the case may be, any unincorporated body having its head office or principal place of business outside New Zealand, is included in such a sale or other disposition, nothing in subsection (1)(a) shall relieve any body corporate incorporated outside New Zealand or, as the case may be, any unincorporated

body having its head office or principal place of business outside New Zealand from any obligation in respect of that liability.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38AG; 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 53

138 Power to trace property improperly disposed of

- (1) In any case where, whether before or after the passing of this Act,—
- (a) any property has been acquired by a person in circumstances which cause it to be just and equitable that that person should hold it upon trust for any registered bank that has been declared to be subject to statutory management; or
 - (b) any property has been improperly disposed of, whether or not the property has become subject to a trust,—
- the court may, if it thinks fit, make an order—
- (c) that the property be transferred or delivered to the statutory manager:
 - (d) that any person who acquired or received the property, or his or her administrator, shall pay to the statutory manager a sum not exceeding the value of that property.
- (2) For the purpose of giving effect to any such order, the court may make such further order as it thinks fit.
- (3) No order made pursuant to this section shall deprive any other person of any estate or interest in the property if the estate or interest was acquired in good faith and for valuable consideration.
- (4) Nothing in this section restricts the operation of the Companies Act 1993.

Compare: 1989 No 11 s 54

Section 138(4): replaced, on 1 July 1994, by section 3 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1993 (1993 No 118).

Section 138(4): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

139 Application of certain provisions of Companies Act 1993

- (1) Sections 275, 292 to 301, 310G, 310I, and 312 of the Companies Act 1993 shall apply to a registered bank that is subject to statutory management under this Act in all respects, and with such modifications as may be necessary, as if—
- (a) the registered bank was a company in liquidation under that Act; and
 - (b) the statutory manager of the registered bank was the liquidator of the company; and
 - (c) the date on which, and the time at which, the registered bank became subject to statutory management was the date on which, and the time at which, the liquidation commenced.

- (2) Nothing in section 263 of the Companies Act 1993 shall apply to a registered bank by virtue of the application of section 312 of that Act.
- (3) To avoid doubt, the reference in section 275(4) of the Companies Act 1993 to clause 1(a) of Schedule 7 of the Companies Act 1993 must be read as a reference to section 148(1) of this Act.

Section 139: replaced, on 1 July 1994, by section 4 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1993 (1993 No 118).

Section 139(1): amended, on 20 September 2007, by section 4(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2007 (2007 No 76).

Section 139(1): amended, on 26 April 1999, by section 6(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1999 (1999 No 22).

Section 139(1)(c): replaced, on 26 April 1999, by section 6(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1999 (1999 No 22).

Section 139(3): inserted, on 20 September 2007, by section 4(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2007 (2007 No 76).

Interpretation relating to covered bonds

Heading: inserted, on 10 December 2013, by section 9 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Covered Bonds) Amendment Act 2013 (2013 No 103).

139A Interpretation

In this section and in sections 139B to 139J, unless the context otherwise requires,—

cover pool, in relation to a covered bond programme, means assets that—

- (a) are owned by the relevant covered bond SPV; and
- (b) secure the obligations of that SPV under the covered bond programme

cover pool monitor means a person that meets the requirements of section 139I(1)

covered bond means a bond, note, or other debt security that has the following features:

- (a) it represents an unsecured obligation of the issuer; and
- (b) the principal and interest owing under the bond, note, or other debt security are guaranteed by a covered bond SPV; and
- (c) the obligations under that guarantee are secured by assets that are owned by that SPV

covered bond programme means any programme of covered bonds under which, on the security of a single cover pool, covered bonds may be issued

covered bond SPV has the meaning given to it by section 139B

issuer has the meaning given to it by section 139C

own includes holding a beneficial, or legal, interest or entitlement, and **owned** and **owner** have corresponding meanings

registered covered bond programme means a covered bond programme that has been registered under section 139G

SPV means a special purpose vehicle.

Section 139A: inserted, on 10 December 2013, by section 9 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Covered Bonds) Amendment Act 2013 (2013 No 103).

139B Meaning of covered bond SPV

In sections 139A to 139J, **covered bond SPV** means, in relation to a covered bond programme, a person that—

- (a) is, or will be, the owner of an asset that has been, or will be, sold, assigned, or otherwise transferred to it by, or on behalf of, an issuer or an associated person of an issuer; and
- (b) has granted, or may grant, a security interest in that asset for the benefit of the secured creditors under the covered bond programme; and
- (c) carries on a business of acting as covered bond guarantor under the covered bond programme (including any business incidental to that purpose); and
- (d) (other than as described in paragraph (c)) does not carry on any other kind of business.

Section 139B: inserted, on 10 December 2013, by section 9 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Covered Bonds) Amendment Act 2013 (2013 No 103).

139C Meaning of issuer

- (1) For the purposes of sections 139A to 139J, **issuer**—

- (a) means—
 - (i) a registered bank that issues or intends to issue covered bonds, or guarantees such covered bonds;
 - (ii) an entity, or a member of a class of entities, specified in regulations made under section 139F(3)(a) that issues or intends to issue covered bonds, or guarantees such covered bonds; and
- (b) includes a bank referred to in paragraph (a)(i) that—
 - (i) has had its registration cancelled under section 77; and
 - (ii) has a registered covered bond programme.

- (2) However, if an issuer (**issuer A**) transfers all of the rights and obligations relating to a covered bond programme to another issuer (**issuer B**), issuer B is, from the time of the transfer, the issuer for the purposes of sections 139A to 139J.
- (3) To avoid doubt, subsection (2) does not affect the rights or obligations of issuer A before the transfer.

Section 139C: inserted, on 10 December 2013, by section 9 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Covered Bonds) Amendment Act 2013 (2013 No 103).

Registration of covered bond programmes

Heading: inserted, on 10 December 2013, by section 9 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Covered Bonds) Amendment Act 2013 (2013 No 103).

139D Register of registered covered bond programmes

- (1) The Bank must keep a public register of registered covered bond programmes.
- (2) The Bank—
 - (a) must determine the form and content of the register and may amend that form and content as it considers necessary; and
 - (b) may, based on the assets in, or that may be included in, the relevant cover pool, designate registered covered bond programmes to particular classes of registered covered bond programmes, as specified by the Bank.
- (3) The Bank must take all reasonable steps to ensure that the information contained in the public register is available to members of the public at all reasonable times.
- (4) A registered covered bond programme must remain on the register despite—
 - (a) any defects in the registration process; or
 - (b) any failure by an issuer to comply with any of the requirements of section 139H.
- (5) However, despite subsection (4), the Bank may remove a registered covered bond programme from the register—
 - (a) if—
 - (i) all obligations under that programme have been fulfilled; or
 - (ii) the security interest over the cover pool has been enforced; or
 - (iii) the issuer has requested the removal; and
 - (b) if, in all cases, the Bank has received evidence, acceptable to the Bank, that both the relevant bond trustee and security trustee consent to the removal.
- (6) To avoid doubt,—
 - (a) registration occurs at the time and date that the Bank enters the details relating to the covered bond programme on the register:
 - (b) a defect in the registration process of a covered bond programme does not affect a person's ability to enforce his, her, or its rights in relation to that covered bond programme or any covered bond issued under that covered bond programme:
 - (c) the failure of an issuer to register a covered bond programme or to comply with any requirement under section 139H does not affect any other person's ability to enforce his, her, or its rights in relation to that covered

bond programme or any covered bond issued under that covered bond programme.

Section 139D: inserted, on 10 December 2013, by section 9 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Covered Bonds) Amendment Act 2013 (2013 No 103).

139E Requirement, and application, for registration of covered bond programme

- (1) Only an issuer may apply to the Bank to register a covered bond programme.
- (2) An application must be—
 - (a) made in the manner specified by the Bank; and
 - (b) accompanied by a fee (if any), as determined by the Bank with the approval of the Minister.
- (3) The issuer must provide the Bank with any information that the Bank requires to enable it to determine the application.
- (4) An issuer must not issue, or permit the issue of, a covered bond other than under a registered covered bond programme.
- (5) An issuer commits an offence if, without lawful justification or excuse, the issuer—
 - (a) issues a covered bond other than under a registered covered bond programme; or
 - (b) permits the issue of a covered bond other than under a registered covered bond programme; or
 - (c) provides information for the purposes of an application that is false or misleading in any material particular.
- (6) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156AB.
- (7) A determination under subsection (2)(b) is secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements).

Legislation Act 2019 requirements for secondary legislation made under this section

Publication	The maker must publish it in the <i>Gazette</i>	LA19 ss 73, 74(1)(a), Sch 1 cl 14
Presentation	It is not required to be presented to the House of Representatives because a transitional exemption applies under Schedule 1 of the Legislation Act 2019	LA19 s 114, Sch 1 cl 32(1)(a)
Disallowance	It may be disallowed by the House of Representatives	LA19 ss 115, 116

This note is not part of the Act.

Section 139E: inserted, on 10 December 2013, by section 9 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Covered Bonds) Amendment Act 2013 (2013 No 103).

Section 139E(2)(b): amended, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

Section 139E(7): inserted, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

139F Determination of application for registration of covered bond programme

- (1) The Bank must not register a covered bond programme unless it is satisfied that the requirements set out in subsection (2) are met.
- (2) The requirements are as follows:
 - (a) that the cover pool assets are, or will be, owned by an identified covered bond SPV that—
 - (i) is a company (within the meaning given in section 2(1) of the Companies Act 1993); or
 - (ii) is a person or partnership specified in regulations made under subsection (3); and
 - (b) that a cover pool monitor has been appointed; and
 - (c) that a register of cover pool assets will be maintained; and
 - (d) that the covered bond programme specifies, or refers to documents that specify, procedures and internal controls that ensure—
 - (i) the up-to-date and accurate keeping of that register; and
 - (ii) that the assets in the cover pool remain consistent with any asset class designation under section 139D(2)(b); and
 - (e) that the covered bond programme specifies a test, or tests, to determine, in accordance with any procedures specified in that programme, whether the value of the cover pool assets is at least equal to the principal amount outstanding on the covered bonds; and
 - (f) that the covered bond programme provides for the covered bond SPV to perform, or arrange to have performed on its behalf, the requirements of section 139H(1)(a) and (b)(i)—
 - (i) in the event that any amounts become due and payable by the covered bond SPV under the covered bond programme; and
 - (ii) until the security interest over the cover pool assets has been enforced; and
 - (g) that the issuer is in compliance with all other requirements imposed in relation to covered bonds by, or under,—
 - (i) section 74; or
 - (ii) regulations made under subsection (3).
- (3) The Governor-General may, by Order in Council, on the advice of the Minister given in accordance with a recommendation of the Bank, make regulations—
 - (a) specifying entities, or classes of entities, for the purposes of section 139C(1)(a)(ii):
 - (b) specifying persons or partnerships, or classes of persons or partnerships, for the purposes of subsection (2)(a)(ii):

- (c) prescribing additional requirements for the purposes of subsection (2)(g)(ii):
- (d) prescribing conditions in relation to the entities, persons, or partnerships referred to in paragraphs (a) and (b).
- (4) Regulations under subsection (3) are secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements).

Legislation Act 2019 requirements for secondary legislation made under this section

Publication	PCO must publish it on the legislation website and notify it in the <i>Gazette</i>	LA19 s 69(1)(c)
Presentation	The Minister must present it to the House of Representatives	LA19 s 114, Sch 1 cl 32(1)(a)
Disallowance	It may be disallowed by the House of Representatives	LA19 ss 115, 116

This note is not part of the Act.

Section 139F: inserted, on 10 December 2013, by section 9 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Covered Bonds) Amendment Act 2013 (2013 No 103).

Section 139F(4): inserted, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

139G Bank must approve or decline application

- (1) Having considered an application made under section 139E(2), the Bank must either approve or decline the application.
- (2) If the Bank is satisfied that an issuer meets the requirements of section 139F(2), the Bank must approve the application and register the covered bond programme.
- (3) The Bank must otherwise decline the application.
- (4) If the Bank approves the application, it must give its decision to the issuer—
 - (a) in writing; and
 - (b) within 60 working days after receiving all of the information required by the Bank to determine the application.
- (5) If the Bank proposes to decline the application, the Bank must, within 60 working days after receiving all of the information required to determine the application,—
 - (a) give the issuer notice, in writing, of that proposed decision and the reasons for it; and
 - (b) invite the issuer to provide, within 10 working days after the date of the notice, submissions or further information in response to that proposed decision; and
 - (c) take account of any submissions and further information it receives from the issuer; and
 - (d) give its final decision to the issuer—
 - (i) in writing; and

- (ii) within 5 working days after the expiry of the time specified in paragraph (b) (whether or not the Bank receives any submissions or further information).
- (6) Nothing in this section prevents the Bank and the issuer from agreeing to modify the time limits specified in subsections (4) and (5).

Section 139G: inserted, on 10 December 2013, by section 9 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Covered Bonds) Amendment Act 2013 (2013 No 103).

139H Requirements relating to registered covered bond programmes

- (1) Every issuer must, in relation to a registered covered bond programme,—
 - (a) ensure that the test or tests specified in section 139F(2)(e) are carried out at intervals of not more than 12 months and notify the Bank if the result of such test or tests is that the value of the cover pool assets is less than the principal amount outstanding on the covered bonds; and
 - (b) ensure that—
 - (i) a register of cover pool assets is maintained; and
 - (ii) it complies with the procedures and internal controls referred to in section 139F(2)(d); and
 - (c) notify the Bank—
 - (i) of every covered bond issued; and
 - (ii) of any material changes to the registered covered bond programme that would be likely to result in the registered covered bond programme failing to comply with the requirements of section 139F(2); and
 - (iii) if the covered bond programme or the cover pool no longer complies with any asset class designation under section 139D(2)(b); and
 - (d) provide the Bank with any further information it requests in relation to the covered bond programme; and
 - (e) ensure that—
 - (i) the registered covered bond programme complies with the requirements of section 139F(2); and
 - (ii) the reports referred to in section 139I(1)(c)(ii) are provided to any bond trustee and security trustee appointed under the covered bond programme; and
 - (iii) the Bank is provided with a copy of—
 - (A) every report prepared by the cover pool monitor in accordance with section 139I(1)(c)(iii) and (iv); and

- (B) if requested by the Bank, any other report prepared by the cover pool monitor in accordance with section 139I(1)(c)(ii).
- (2) However, if any amounts become due and payable by the covered bond SPV under the covered bond programme,—
 - (a) the issuer is not required to comply with subsection (1); and
 - (b) the covered bond SPV must provide the Bank with any information it requests in relation to that covered bond programme.
- (3) If an issuer fails to comply with any of the requirements of subsection (1), the Bank may, by notice in writing to the issuer, require the issuer to take such corrective action as the Bank may specify in the notice.
- (4) An issuer commits an offence if the issuer, without lawful justification or excuse, fails to comply with a notice issued under subsection (3).
- (5) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156AB.

Section 139H: inserted, on 10 December 2013, by section 9 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Covered Bonds) Amendment Act 2013 (2013 No 103).

Cover pool monitor

Heading: inserted, on 10 December 2013, by section 9 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Covered Bonds) Amendment Act 2013 (2013 No 103).

139I Cover pool monitor

- (1) A **cover pool monitor** must be—
 - (a) independent of the issuer; and
 - (b) 1 or more of the following:
 - (i) a licensed auditor under the Auditor Regulation Act 2011;
 - (ii) (if the issuer ensures that appropriate arrangements are in place to ensure that the functions of the cover pool monitor are performed by, or under the supervision of, a licensed auditor) a registered audit firm under the Auditor Regulation Act 2011;
 - (iii) a member of any other class of persons or firms that has been approved by the Bank; and
 - (c) required, under its contract of appointment, to—
 - (i) assess, at a given point in time, and in accordance with any agreed procedures specified in the covered bond programme,—
 - (A) the arithmetical accuracy of the tests carried out in accordance with section 139H(1)(a); and
 - (B) the issuer's compliance with the requirements of section 139H(1)(b); and

- (ii) provide the issuer with reports on the matters required under paragraph (c)(i) at intervals of not more than 12 months; and
 - (iii) provide reports at intervals of not more than 3 months if the cover pool monitor is not satisfied—
 - (A) as to the arithmetical accuracy of the tests carried out in accordance with section 139H(1)(a); or
 - (B) that the issuer has complied with the requirements of section 139H(1)(b); and
 - (iv) if subparagraph (iii) applies, continue to provide 3-monthly reports until the cover pool monitor is satisfied that the issuer has remedied those matters; and
 - (v) report on any other matters required by regulations made under subsection (2).
- (2) The Governor-General may, by Order in Council, on the advice of the Minister given in accordance with a recommendation of the Bank, make regulations specifying additional matters that the cover pool monitor must be required to report on, and the information to be provided with such a report, for the purposes of subsection (1)(c)(v).
- (3) For the purposes of this section, **independent** means independent of both the issuer and any associated person of the issuer.
- (4) However, to avoid doubt, a person's appointment as auditor does not affect his, her, or its independence.
- (5) Regulations under subsection (2) are secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements).

Legislation Act 2019 requirements for secondary legislation made under this section

Publication	PCO must publish it on the legislation website and notify it in the <i>Gazette</i>	LA19 s 69(1)(c)
Presentation	The Minister must present it to the House of Representatives	LA19 s 114, Sch 1 cl 32(1)(a)
Disallowance	It may be disallowed by the House of Representatives	LA19 ss 115, 116

This note is not part of the Act.

Section 139I: inserted, on 10 December 2013, by section 9 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Covered Bonds) Amendment Act 2013 (2013 No 103).

Section 139I(5): inserted, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

Statutory management, etc, of issuer

Heading: inserted, on 10 December 2013, by section 9 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Covered Bonds) Amendment Act 2013 (2013 No 103).

139J Limitation on application of statutory management, etc, provisions to covered bond SPV

- (1) Subsections (2) and (3) apply in relation to the following provisions:

- (a) sections 122(1), 126(1), 127(1), and 128(2) of this Act;
 - (b) section 248 of the Companies Act 1993;
 - (c) sections 42(1), 43(1), 44(1), and 45(2) of the Corporations (Investigation and Management) Act 1989.
- (2) Nothing in a provision referred to in subsection (1)—
- (a) prevents the transfer of the legal title to assets in a cover pool from an issuer to a covered bond SPV;
 - (b) prevents the transfer, under a contract, of any documentation or data relating to assets in a cover pool from the issuer to a covered bond SPV or a person acting on behalf of that SPV;
 - (c) prevents a covered bond SPV, or a person acting on behalf of that SPV, from exercising a power of attorney granted by the issuer in relation to assets in a cover pool;
 - (d) affects the issuer's obligation to pay moneys collected on behalf of, and held on trust for, a covered bond SPV, to that SPV;
 - (e) prevents the enforcement of any of the above rights by, or on behalf of, a covered bond SPV.
- (3) However, subsection (2) applies only if—
- (a) the covered bond SPV is the owner of the assets in the cover pool; and
 - (b) the covered bond programme is registered under section 139G.
- (4) A covered bond SPV is not—
- (a) an associated person for the purposes of section 117(1)(a) of this Act, section 38(1)(a) of the Corporations (Investigation and Management) Act 1989, or section 170(1)(b) of the Insurance (Prudential Supervision) Act 2010; or
 - (b) a subsidiary for the purposes of section 117(2) of this Act, section 38(2) of the Corporations (Investigation and Management) Act 1989, or section 170(2) of the Insurance (Prudential Supervision) Act 2010; or
 - (c) a related company for the purposes of section 271 of the Companies Act 1993.

Section 139J: inserted, on 10 December 2013, by section 9 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Covered Bonds) Amendment Act 2013 (2013 No 103).

Miscellaneous provisions

140 Application of this Part to joint statutory managers, associated persons, and subsidiaries

- (1) Where an Order in Council is made under section 117 appointing 2 or more persons as statutory managers of a registered bank, the order shall state

whether the powers conferred by this Part shall be exercised by those persons acting together or may be exercised individually.

- (2) For the purposes of this Part, unless the context otherwise requires,—
- (a) references to a statutory manager shall, where 2 or more persons are appointed as statutory managers include references to those statutory managers:
 - (b) where an associated person of a registered bank is declared to be subject to statutory management, or a subsidiary of a registered bank becomes subject to statutory management under section 117(2), references in sections 119 to 139 and in sections 141 to 156 to a registered bank shall be read as references to that associated person or subsidiary, as the case may be.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38R(11), (12); 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 56

141 Termination of appointment of statutory manager

- (1) The Minister may, by notice in writing to the statutory manager of a registered bank that is given in accordance with the recommendation of the Bank, terminate the appointment of that statutory manager for inability to perform the functions of the office or for bankruptcy or if the Minister is of the opinion that the statutory manager has failed to perform the statutory manager's duties satisfactorily.
- (2) A statutory manager of a registered bank may resign office by notice in writing to the Minister.
- (3) Where the appointment of a statutory manager is terminated under subsection (1) or a statutory manager resigns office, or dies, the Minister may, by notice published in the *Gazette*, appoint a person to replace that statutory manager for a specified period.
- (3A) Where a notice is published in the *Gazette* under subsection (3) appointing 2 or more persons as statutory managers, the notice shall state whether the powers conferred by this Part shall be exercised by those persons acting together or may be exercised individually.
- (4) A statutory manager continues in office until his or her successor is appointed despite—
 - (a) his or her resignation; or
 - (b) his or her period of appointment having expired.
- (5) A registered bank continues to be subject to statutory management under section 117 even though its statutory manager—
 - (a) has had his or her appointment terminated, or
 - (b) has resigned from office; or
 - (c) has died, or

- (d) has ceased to hold office because of the expiry of his or her period of appointment.
- (6) The Bank must publish a notice given by the Minister under this section in the *Gazette* as soon as practicable.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38AH; 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 57

Section 141(1): replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 141(3): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 141(3A): inserted, on 8 April 1992, by section 2 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1992 (1992 No 32).

Section 141(3A): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 141(4): replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 141(5): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 141(6): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

142 Statutory manager may apply to High Court for directions

- (1) A statutory manager of a registered bank may apply to the High Court for directions concerning the business or property of the registered bank or the management or administration of that business or property, or the exercise of any powers under this Part.
- (2) On any application under subsection (1) the High Court may give directions concerning the business or property of the registered bank, or the management or administration of that business or property, or the exercise of any powers under this Part and every person shall be bound by any such directions.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38AI; 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 58

143 Prior winding up, liquidation, or receivership to cease

- (1) Where a registered bank, or any subsidiary or associated person of a registered bank, becomes subject to statutory management, and that registered bank, subsidiary, or associated person is already being wound up or is already in liquidation, receivership, or voluntary administration,—
- (a) the winding up, liquidation, receivership, or voluntary administration of that registered bank, subsidiary, or associated person must, for so long as it continues to be subject to statutory management, cease; and
- (b) the person appointed as liquidator, receiver, or administrator must be discharged.
- (2) Where the statutory management of any registered bank, subsidiary, or associated person referred to in subsection (1) is terminated by, or as the result of the making of, an Order in Council under section 144(1), the liquidation or receiv-

ership or voluntary administration of that registered bank, subsidiary, or associated person shall, unless the Order in Council terminating the statutory management otherwise provides, and subject to such terms and conditions as the order may specify, revive as if it had not ceased by reason of this section.

- (3) Where any liquidation, receivership, or voluntary administration revives under subsection (2), the person specified in the order as such must be the liquidator, receiver, or administrator of that registered bank, subsidiary, or associated person for the time being.

Compare: 1989 No 11 s 61

Section 143 heading: amended, on 1 July 1994, pursuant to section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1993 (1993 No 118).

Section 143(1): replaced, on 1 November 2007, by section 41 of the Companies Amendment Act 2006 (2006 No 56).

Section 143(2): amended, on 1 November 2007, by section 41 of the Companies Amendment Act 2006 (2006 No 56).

Section 143(3): replaced, on 1 November 2007, by section 41 of the Companies Amendment Act 2006 (2006 No 56).

143A Continuation of statutory management

- (1) This section applies to a registered bank, an associated person of a registered bank, or a subsidiary of a registered bank, that has been removed from the New Zealand register under section 317 of the Companies Act 1993 while subject to statutory management under this Act.
- (2) If a person to whom this section applies is restored to the New Zealand register under section 328 of the Companies Act 1993, the person continues to be subject to statutory management from the date that person is so restored.

Section 143A: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

144 Termination of statutory management

- (1) The Governor-General may, by Order in Council, on the advice of the Minister given in accordance with a recommendation of the Bank, declare that—
- (a) any registered bank:
 - (b) any associated person of a registered bank:
 - (c) any subsidiary of a registered bank,—
- subject to statutory management, shall cease to be subject to statutory management.
- (2) Any registered bank, or associated person of a registered bank, or subsidiary of a registered bank shall cease to be subject to statutory management if that registered bank, or associated person, or subsidiary, as the case may be, is put into liquidation on the application of the statutory manager.

- (3) Any person who is affected by the making of an Order in Council under section 117 may, at any time, request the Bank to make a recommendation under subsection (1).
- (4) Where an Order in Council is made under subsection (1) or, a registered bank, associated person, or subsidiary is put into liquidation—
 - (a) that person shall cease to be subject to statutory management at the specified time; and
 - (b) the appointment of any statutory manager appointed in respect of that person shall terminate at the specified time; and
 - (c) the appointment of any person as a member of an advisory committee under section 119 in relation to the statutory management of that person shall terminate at the specified time.
- (5) For the purposes of subsection (4) **specified time** means,—
 - (a) in any case where an Order in Council is made pursuant to subsection (1), the date and time specified in the order:
 - (b) in any case where a liquidator is appointed, the date and time of the liquidator's appointment.
- (6) Where an Order in Council is made under subsection (1) declaring that a registered bank shall cease to be subject to statutory management,—
 - (a) every subsidiary of that registered bank, except any subsidiary specified in the order, shall cease to be subject to statutory management on the same date as that specified as the date upon which, and at the same time as that specified as the time at which, the registered bank ceases to be subject to statutory management:
 - (b) the appointment of any person appointed as a statutory manager of every such subsidiary shall terminate on the date and at the time referred to in paragraph (a):
 - (c) the appointment of any person appointed as a member of an advisory committee under section 119 in relation to the statutory management of that subsidiary shall terminate on the date and at the time referred to in paragraph (a).
- (7) An Order in Council under subsection (1) is secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements).

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38AJ; 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 62

Legislation Act 2019 requirements for secondary legislation made under this section

Publication	PCO must publish it on the legislation website and notify it in the <i>Gazette</i>	LA19 s 69(1)(c)
Presentation	The Minister must present it to the House of Representatives, unless it relates exclusively to an individual (in which case a transitional exemption applies under Schedule 1 of the Legislation Act 2019)	LA19 s 114, Sch 1 cl 32(1)(a)
Disallowance	It may be disallowed by the House of Representatives	LA19 ss 115, 116

This note is not part of the Act.

Section 144(2): replaced, on 1 July 1994, by section 7(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1993 (1993 No 118).

Section 144(4): amended, on 1 July 1994, by section 7(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1993 (1993 No 118).

Section 144(4)(a): amended, on 26 April 1999, by section 7(a) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1999 (1999 No 22).

Section 144(4)(b): amended, on 26 April 1999, by section 7(a) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1999 (1999 No 22).

Section 144(4)(c): amended, on 26 April 1999, by section 7(a) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1999 (1999 No 22).

Section 144(5): amended, on 26 April 1999, by section 7(b) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1999 (1999 No 22).

Section 144(5)(a): amended, on 26 April 1999, by section 7(c) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1999 (1999 No 22).

Section 144(5)(b): replaced, on 1 July 1994, by section 7(3) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1993 (1993 No 118).

Section 144(5)(b): amended, on 26 April 1999, by section 7(c) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1999 (1999 No 22).

Section 144(6)(a): amended, on 26 April 1999, by section 7(d) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1999 (1999 No 22).

Section 144(6)(b): amended, on 26 April 1999, by section 7(e) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1999 (1999 No 22).

Section 144(6)(c): amended, on 26 April 1999, by section 7(e) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1999 (1999 No 22).

Section 144(7): inserted, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

145 Obligations incurred by statutory manager

- (1) Any obligations incurred by a statutory manager of a registered bank in the course of his or her duties as statutory manager are incurred by that statutory manager on behalf of the registered bank, and the statutory manager does not incur personal liability for those obligations.
- (2) In the winding up or liquidation of a registered bank or an associated person of a registered bank or a subsidiary of a registered bank, all amounts required to satisfy obligations incurred by the statutory manager on behalf of the registered bank, associated person, or subsidiary must be paid in priority to all other debts.

Section 145: replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 38 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

146 Indemnity

[Repealed]

Section 146: repealed, on 21 August 2003, by section 39 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

147 Registered bank not entitled to be informed about exercise of powers

Except as otherwise provided in this Part, no registered bank, associated person, or subsidiary, and no director, officer, or employee of a registered bank, associated person, or subsidiary, has a right to be consulted or informed as to the exercise, or possible exercise, of any powers conferred by this Part or to make representations to any person as to the exercise, or possible exercise, of those powers.

Compare: 1989 No 11 s 64

148 Expenses of statutory management

- (1) All costs, charges, and expenses properly incurred by a statutory manager or a member of an advisory committee in the exercise of the manager's or the member's functions and powers under this Part (including such remuneration as may be approved by the Bank) shall be payable out of the property of the registered bank or associated person of the registered bank or a subsidiary of the registered bank in respect of which the statutory manager or member is appointed in priority to all other claims.
- (2) The statutory manager may, with the approval of the Bank, apportion the costs, charges, and expenses referred to in subsection (1) between the registered bank and any associated person or subsidiary of the registered bank that is also subject to statutory management in the amounts that the statutory manager considers just and equitable.
- (3) This section prevails over section 145.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38AL; 1986 No 131 s 10; 1989 No 11 s 65

Section 148(1): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 148(2): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 148(3): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

149 Advances to statutory manager and members of advisory committee

- (1) With the consent of the Minister, there may be advanced out of a Crown Bank Account, without further appropriation than this section, to a statutory manager of a registered bank or a member of an advisory committee, such amounts as the Minister may approve in respect of costs, charges, and expenses (including remuneration) due to, or incurred by, that person.

- (2) All money so advanced to that person shall be refunded to the Crown out of money payable to that person, and the Crown shall have all the rights of the person to whom the advance was made to receive and recover that money. Money refunded to the Crown shall be credited upon receipt to a Crown Bank Account.

Compare: 1989 No 11 s 66

Section 149(1): amended, on 25 January 2005, pursuant to section 65R(3) of the Public Finance Act 1989 (1989 No 44).

Section 149(2): amended, on 25 January 2005, pursuant to section 65R(3) of the Public Finance Act 1989 (1989 No 44).

150 Duty to deliver books and property to statutory manager

- (1) Every person having possession, custody, or control of any books, or records, or documents, or other property belonging to any registered bank subject to statutory management, shall forthwith after it becomes subject to statutory management, deliver or give possession of those books, records, documents, or other property to the statutory manager.
- (2) If any person fails for 7 days to comply with the requirements of subsection (1), that person commits an offence against this Act.
- (3) If any person fails to comply with subsection (1), the statutory manager may, at any time, certify the failure to the court (whether or not an offence has been committed under subsection (2)), and the court may inquire into the matter and, after hearing any witnesses who may be produced against, or by, or on behalf of the alleged offender, and after hearing any statement which may be offered in defence, may punish the offender as if the offender were liable under subpart 4 of Part 2 of the Contempt of Court Act 2019 for breach of a court order.
- (4) It shall not be a defence to any proceedings under this section that the person in possession or control of any property is, or was, a trustee of the property for the registered bank, or entitled to a lien or other charge over the property, or was a receiver or manager of the property.
- (5) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156AC.

Compare: 1989 No 11 s 67

Section 150(1): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 150(2): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 150(3): amended, on 26 August 2020, by section 29 of the Contempt of Court Act 2019 (2019 No 44).

Section 150(5): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

151 Offence to destroy, alter, or conceal records

- (1) Every person commits an offence against this Act who—

- (a) with intent to defeat the purposes of this Part, destroys, alters, or conceals any book, document, or record of, or relating to, a registered bank that is subject to statutory management or sends or attempts to send out of New Zealand any such book, document, or record; or
 - (b) fails or refuses to answer, to the best of that person's knowledge and ability, any question which that person may be asked by the statutory manager in relation to any such book, or document, or record, or any property, or wilfully gives a false or misleading answer to that question.
- (1A) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156AC.
- (2) If, in any prosecution for an offence alleged to have been committed against this section, it is proved that the person charged with the offence has destroyed, altered, or concealed any book, document, or record, or has sent, or attempted to send, out of New Zealand, any such book, document, or record, the onus of proving that in so doing that person had not acted in contravention of this section shall lie on that person.

Compare: 1989 No 11 s 68

Section 151(1): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 151(1)(b): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 151(1A): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

152 Regulations relating to powers of Bank and statutory manager

- (1) The Governor-General may, from time to time, by Order in Council, make regulations under section 173 conferring on the Bank, or a statutory manager of a registered bank, ancillary or additional powers necessary or desirable for the purposes of this Part.
- (2) The regulations shall be laid before the House of Representatives within 12 sitting days after the date on which they are made if the House of Representatives is then in session, and, if not, shall be laid before the House of Representatives within 12 days after the commencement of the next ensuing session.
- (3) *[Repealed]*
- (4) *[Repealed]*

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 38AM; 1986 No 131 s 10

Section 152(3): repealed, on 1 January 2016, by section 14 of the Legislation (Confirmable Instruments) Amendment Act 2015 (2015 No 120).

Section 152(4): repealed, on 1 January 2016, by section 14 of the Legislation (Confirmable Instruments) Amendment Act 2015 (2015 No 120).

152A Regulations are confirmable instruments

[Repealed]

Section 152A: repealed, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

153 Application of other Acts

- (1) Subject to subsection (2), all the provisions of the Companies Act 1993 and all rules and regulations under that Act shall, so far as they are applicable, and with the necessary modifications, apply to a registered bank that is a company within the meaning of section 2 of that Act and that is subject to statutory management.
- (2) *[Repealed]*
- (3) *[Repealed]*
- (4) Nothing in sections 120, 207P to 209B, and 214 of the Companies Act 1993 shall apply to a registered bank that is subject to statutory management.
- (5) Nothing in the Receiverships Act 1993 shall apply to a company that is subject to statutory management.
- (6) Subject to subsection (7), all the provisions of the Building Societies Act 1965 and all rules and regulations under that Act shall, so far as they are applicable, and with the necessary modifications, apply to a registered bank that is a building society within the meaning of section 2 of that Act and that is subject to statutory management.
- (7) Nothing in sections 76 and 91 to 106 of the Building Societies Act 1965 shall apply to a building society that is subject to statutory management.
- (8) The Governor-General may, from time to time, by Order in Council, on the advice of the Minister given in accordance with the recommendation of the Bank, declare that the provisions of any Act under which any other registered bank that is subject to statutory management is incorporated, constituted, or registered corresponding with the provisions referred to in subsections (4), (7), and (9) shall not apply to that registered bank.
- (9) To avoid doubt, the Bank or any other person is not a director (within the meaning of section 126 of the Companies Act 1993) of any registered bank or an associated person of the registered bank by reason only of the Bank or that other person exercising the powers conferred by this Part.
- (10) An Order in Council under subsection (8) is secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements).

Legislation Act 2019 requirements for secondary legislation made under this section

Publication	PCO must publish it on the legislation website and notify it in the <i>Gazette</i>	LA19 s 69(1)(c)
Presentation	The Minister must present it to the House of Representatives, unless it relates exclusively to an individual (in which case a transitional exemption applies under Schedule 1 of the Legislation Act 2019)	LA19 s 114, Sch 1 cl 32(1)(a)

Disallowance It may be disallowed by the House of Representatives LA19 ss 115, 116
This note is not part of the Act.

Section 153: replaced, on 1 July 1994, by section 9 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1993 (1993 No 118).

Section 153(1): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 153(2): repealed, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 153(3): repealed, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 153(4): amended, on 1 April 2014, by section 126 of the Financial Reporting (Amendments to Other Enactments) Act 2013 (2013 No 102).

Section 153(4): amended, on 18 June 2007, by section 17 of the Companies Amendment Act (No 2) 2006 (2006 No 62).

Section 153(8): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 153(9): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 153(10): inserted, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

154 Appointment of auditors

- (1) The statutory manager of a registered bank must appoint 1 or more persons (whether as individuals or as the members from time to time of any firm or firms) to be the auditor of that registered bank.
- (1A) The person or persons appointed to be the auditor under subsection (1) must be—
 - (a) licensed auditors (within the meaning of section 6(1) of the Auditor Regulation Act 2011); and
 - (b) approved by the Bank.
- (2) Every such appointment shall be for a term not exceeding 2 years, but any person appointed as auditor shall continue in office until a successor comes into office.
- (3) Any person appointed as auditor shall be eligible for reappointment.
- (4) Any auditor may be removed from office at any time by the Minister, by notice in writing to the auditor, for inability to perform the functions of the office, bankruptcy, neglect of duty, or misconduct, proved to the satisfaction of the Minister.
- (5) The auditor shall be paid such fees as are fixed by the statutory manager with the approval of the Bank.
- (6) Every auditor shall have a right of access at all times to the books and papers of the registered bank, and shall be entitled to require from its officers and

employees such information and explanations as the auditor thinks necessary for the performance of the auditor's duties.

- (7) Any person holding office as auditor of a registered bank at the time that it is declared to be subject to statutory management shall cease to hold that office but may be appointed under this section as auditor of the registered bank.
- (8) A notice given under subsection (4) must be published in the *Gazette* as soon as practicable.

Section 154(1): replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 154(1): amended, on 1 April 2014, by section 126 of the Financial Reporting (Amendments to Other Enactments) Act 2013 (2013 No 102).

Section 154(1A): inserted, on 1 April 2014, by section 126 of the Financial Reporting (Amendments to Other Enactments) Act 2013 (2013 No 102).

Section 154(4): amended, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 154(4): amended, on 1 January 2002, by section 70(1) of the Human Rights Amendment Act 2001 (2001 No 96).

Section 154(8): inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 41 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

155 Annual accounts

- (1) Within 3 months after the end of each financial year or such later date as may be approved by the Bank, the statutory manager of a registered bank shall prepare the following statements showing the financial position of the registered bank and its subsidiaries at the end of that year and the results of their trading for that year:
 - (a) a statement of financial position and statement of financial performance of the registered bank; and
 - (b) a consolidated statement of assets and liabilities and consolidated statement of trading of the registered bank and its subsidiaries.
- (2) The statement of financial position, and the consolidated statement of assets and liabilities, shall each be signed by the statutory manager.
- (3) The accounts specified in subsection (1) shall be audited and reported on by the auditor.

Section 155(1)(a): amended, on 1 October 1997, pursuant to section 6(1) of the Financial Reporting Amendment Act 1997 (1997 No 17).

Section 155(1)(a): amended, on 1 October 1997, pursuant to section 6(2) of the Financial Reporting Amendment Act 1997 (1997 No 17).

Section 155(2): amended, on 1 October 1997, pursuant to section 6(1) of the Financial Reporting Amendment Act 1997 (1997 No 17).

156 Annual report by statutory manager

- (1) The statutory manager of a registered bank shall, after the end of each financial year, prepare a report on the conduct of the management and the affairs of the registered bank and its subsidiaries.
- (2) The report, together with the accounts and the auditor's report on them, shall be submitted to the Minister and the Bank within 7 days after the completion of the auditor's report.
- (3) The report, accounts, and the auditor's report on them shall within 14 days after submission to the Minister be filed—
 - (a) in the case of a registered bank which is a company, with the Registrar of Companies:
 - (b) in the case of a registered bank which is a building society, with the Registrar of Building Societies:
 - (c) in the case of any other body corporate, with the person exercising functions corresponding with those of the Registrar of Companies or the Registrar of Building Societies.

Penalties for offences against this Part

Heading: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 40 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

156AA Penalty for miscellaneous offences

- (1) A person who commits an offence under any of the provisions listed in subsection (2) is liable, on conviction,—
 - (a) in the case of an individual, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 3 months or to a fine not exceeding \$50,000:
 - (b) in the case of a body corporate, to a fine not exceeding \$500,000.
- (2) The provisions are—
 - (a) section 77A (which relates to failing to comply with the requirement for consent to be sought from the Bank in the event of a significant change of ownership):
 - (b) section 94 (which relates to failing to comply with a requirement from the Bank that information, data, or forecasts be audited):
 - (c) section 98B(2)(a) (which relates to failing to comply with the requirements notified by the Bank in relation to a home country supervisor):
 - (d) section 98B(2)(b) (which relates to supplying any information or data to a home country supervisor that is false or misleading in a material particular):
 - (e) section 105 (which relates to the misuse of confidential information):

- (f) section 115 (which relates to the unauthorised disclosure of the fact that a direction has been given).

Section 156AA: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 40 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 156AA(1): amended, on 1 July 2013, by section 413 of the Criminal Procedure Act 2011 (2011 No 81).

156AB Penalty for offences relating to supply of information, etc

- (1) A person who commits an offence under any of the provisions listed in subsection (2) is liable, on conviction,—
 - (a) in the case of an individual, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 12 months or to a fine not exceeding \$100,000:
 - (b) in the case of a body corporate, to a fine not exceeding \$1,000,000.
- (2) The provisions are—
 - (a) section 74 (which relates to failing to comply with a condition of registration):
 - (b) section 89B (which relates to failing to make the most recent disclosure statement publicly available):
 - (c) section 93 (which relates to a registered bank failing to comply with provisions concerning the supply of information for the purposes of prudential supervision and to supplying information that is false or misleading in a material particular):
 - (d) section 93B (which relates to a person failing, after being required by a registered bank to do so, to supply the registered bank with information, data, or forecasts relating to that person in order to enable the registered bank to comply with a notice under section 93):
 - (e) section 93C (which relates to a person failing to comply with provisions concerning the supply of information for the purposes of prudential supervision and to supplying information that is false or misleading in a material particular):
 - (f) section 99(3) (which relates to hindering, obstructing, or delaying the conduct of an inspection).
 - (g) section 139E(5)(a) (which relates to issuing a covered bond other than under a registered covered bond programme):
 - (h) section 139E(5)(b) (which relates to permitting the issue of a covered bond other than under a registered covered bond programme):
 - (i) section 139E(5)(c) (which relates to providing false or misleading information to the Bank in relation to an application to register a covered bond programme):

- (j) section 139H(4) (which relates to failing to comply with a notice issued by the Bank in relation to the requirements relating to a registered covered bond programme).

Section 156AB: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 40 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 156AB(1): amended, on 1 July 2013, by section 413 of the Criminal Procedure Act 2011 (2011 No 81).

Section 156AB(2)(g): inserted, on 10 December 2013, by section 10 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Covered Bonds) Amendment Act 2013 (2013 No 103).

Section 156AB(2)(h): inserted, on 10 December 2013, by section 10 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Covered Bonds) Amendment Act 2013 (2013 No 103).

Section 156AB(2)(i): inserted, on 10 December 2013, by section 10 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Covered Bonds) Amendment Act 2013 (2013 No 103).

Section 156AB(2)(j): inserted, on 10 December 2013, by section 10 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Covered Bonds) Amendment Act 2013 (2013 No 103).

156AC Penalty for offences relating to registration of banks, disclosure statements, prudential supervision of registered banks, etc

- (1) A person who commits an offence under any of the provisions listed in subsection (2) is liable, on conviction,—
 - (a) in the case of an individual, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 18 months or to a fine not exceeding \$200,000;
 - (b) in the case of a body corporate, to a fine not exceeding \$2,000,000.
- (2) The provisions are—
 - (a) section 70 (which relates to providing false or misleading information for the purposes of an application for registration);
 - (b) section 72 (which relates to falsely holding out to be a registered bank);
 - (c) section 80 (which relates to failing to obtain or maintain a current credit rating);
 - (d) section 81AC (which relates to failing to supply information or data to a registered bank to enable the registered bank to comply with an Order in Council made under section 81);
 - (e) section 89 (which relates to failing to publish information that is required to be published in a disclosure statement);
 - (f) section 89A (which relates to publishing a disclosure statement that includes information that is false or misleading);
 - (g) section 89C(1)(a) (which relates to failing to publish a disclosure statement that does not contain false or misleading information after being required to do so under section 83);
 - (h) section 89C(1)(b) (which relates to failing to publish a disclosure statement that contains information that was previously omitted after being required to do so under section 83);

- (i) section 89C(1)(c) (which relates to failing to take the corrective action specified by the Bank in a notice given under section 83 after being required to do so under that section):
- (j) section 95 (which relates to failing to supply a report required by the Bank):
- (k) section 95A (which relates to failing to forward a report prepared under section 95 as required by the Bank):
- (l) section 99(4) (which relates to failing to comply with a requirement from the Bank to supply information for the purposes of an inspection and to supplying information that is false or misleading in a material particular):
- (m) section 103(1) (which relates to hindering, obstructing, or delaying an investigation, etc):
- (n) section 103(2) (which relates to failing to comply with a requirement of a person appointed to carry out an investigation, etc)
- (o) section 114(1) (which relates to failing to comply with a direction):
- (p) section 114(2) (which relates to obstructing or hindering, etc, a registered bank from giving effect to a direction):
- (q) section 126 (which relates to transferring or removing from New Zealand any property or assets of a registered bank that is subject to statutory management):
- (r) section 150 (which relates to failing to deliver books, records, etc, to a statutory manager):
- (s) section 151(1)(a) (which relates to destroying, altering, etc, any book, document, or record relating to a registered bank that is subject to statutory management):
- (t) section 151(1)(b) (which relates to failing or refusing to answer a statutory manager's question about any book, document, etc, relating to a registered bank that is subject to statutory management, and giving a false answer to that question).

Section 156AC: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 40 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 156AC(1): amended, on 1 July 2013, by section 413 of the Criminal Procedure Act 2011 (2011 No 81).

Part 5A

Retention of documents by banks

Part 5A: inserted, on 30 June 1995, by section 2 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act (No 2) 1995 (1995 No 34).

156A Retention of documents by banks

- (1) For the purposes of this section, **bank** means—
 - (a) a registered bank;
 - (b) the Reserve Bank of New Zealand;
 - (c) any other person carrying on in New Zealand the business of banking.
- (2) Subject to this section, every bank—
 - (a) shall retain, until the expiration of the period specified in subsection (3)(a), every cheque or bank draft that is drawn on that bank and that is presented to it for payment; and may thereafter destroy it;
 - (b) shall retain, until the expiration of the period specified in subsection (3)(a), every bill of exchange or promissory note that is made payable at that bank and that is presented to it for payment; and may thereafter destroy it;
 - (c) shall retain, until the expiration of the period specified in subsection (3)(b), every voucher used in connection with account transactions at a bank or branch of a bank (including every deposit or withdrawal slip); and may thereafter destroy it.
- (3) For the purposes of subsection (2),—
 - (a) the period applicable in respect of a document to which paragraph (a) or paragraph (b) of that subsection applies shall be,—
 - (i) in the case of a document payable on demand, the period of 7 years beginning with the date of the document; and
 - (ii) in the case of any other document, the period of 7 years beginning with the due date of the document; and
 - (b) the period applicable in respect of a voucher to which paragraph (c) of that subsection applies, shall be the period of 7 years beginning with the date of the transaction to which the voucher relates.
- (4) It is sufficient compliance with the duty to retain imposed by subsection (2) if—
 - (a) a copy of the document has been made by the bank on microfilm, microfiche, tape, disc, electronic or photographic storage media, or other means; and
 - (b) the copy is able to be reproduced therefrom in a form that can be produced in evidence under the Evidence Act 2006; and

- (c) the copy is retained by the bank for the same period as the document is required to be retained pursuant to that subsection.
- (5) It is sufficient compliance with the duty to retain imposed by subsection (2), in the case of a cheque that has been presented for payment in accordance with section 7D(1)(b)(iii) of the Cheques Act 1960, if—
 - (a) the paying bank arranges, in accordance with the rules of an inter-bank clearing system (within the meaning of section 7A of that Act), for the retention, on behalf of the paying bank, of the cheque or a copy of it in accordance with subsection (4); and
 - (b) the paying bank is entitled to obtain possession of the cheque or the copy; and
 - (c) the cheque or copy is retained on behalf of the paying bank for the period specified in subsection (3)(a).
- (6) No document shall be destroyed pursuant to this section at any time after a demand for the delivery of the document has been made to the bank by the person entitled to it.
- (7) A copy of a document made pursuant to this section is admissible in evidence in legal proceedings to the same extent as the document of which it is a copy would have been admissible.
- (8) This section applies to cheques, drafts, bills, and promissory notes received by a bank and vouchers in the possession of a bank either before or after the coming into operation of this section.

Section 156A: inserted, on 30 June 1995, by section 2 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act (No 2) 1995 (1995 No 34).

Section 156A(4)(b): amended, on 1 August 2007, by section 216 of the Evidence Act 2006 (2006 No 69).

Part 5B

Oversight of payment systems

Part 5B: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 42 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

General

Heading: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 42 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

156B Exercise of powers under this Part

The powers conferred on the Bank by this Part must be exercised for the purpose of promoting the maintenance of a sound and efficient financial system.

Section 156B: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 42 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Supply of information relating to payment systems

Heading: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 42 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

156C Requirement to supply information relating to payment system

- (1) The Bank may, by notice in writing to any person referred to in subsection (2), require that person to supply any information or data relating to a payment system.
- (2) A notice may be given to—
 - (a) an operator of a payment system; or
 - (b) any person who is wholly or partly responsible for the operation of a payment system; or
 - (c) a participant in a payment system.
- (3) A notice may specify—
 - (a) the periods for which, and the form in which, the information or data must be supplied; and
 - (b) the time by which, and the place in New Zealand at which, the information or data must be supplied.
- (4) The Bank may, by a subsequent notice, vary, revoke, or amend a notice.

Section 156C: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 42 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

156D Offence to fail to supply information

- (1) A person commits an offence if the person, without lawful justification or excuse,—
 - (a) fails to supply information or data in accordance with section 156C or fails to comply with any requirement of the Bank under that section; or
 - (b) supplies information or data in accordance with section 156C that is false or misleading in a material particular.
- (2) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156J.

Section 156D: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 42 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

156E Requirement that information be audited

- (1) The Bank may, by notice in writing to any person referred to in section 156C(2), require that person to obtain an audit of any information or data supplied in accordance with section 156C if the Bank has reasonable grounds to believe that the information or data is inadequate or inaccurate.
- (2) Every audit must be conducted by a suitably qualified independent person who is approved by the Bank.

Section 156E: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 42 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

156F Offence not to comply with requirement for audit

- (1) A person commits an offence if the person fails, without lawful justification or excuse, to comply with a requirement under section 156E(1) for that person to obtain an audit.
- (2) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156J.

Section 156F: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 42 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Disclosure of information relating to payment systems

Heading: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 42 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

156G Disclosure of information

- (1) The Bank may publish or disclose any information or data supplied in accordance with section 156C only if—
 - (a) the information or data is available to the public under any Act or is otherwise publicly available information; or
 - (b) the information or data is in a statistical or summary form; or
 - (c) the publication or disclosure of the information or data is for the purposes of, or in connection with, the exercise of powers conferred by this Act; or
 - (d) the publication or disclosure of the information or data is to any central bank, authority, or body in any other country that exercises functions that correspond with, or are similar to, those conferred on the Bank under this Act, and the Bank is satisfied that the information or data will be used by that central bank, authority, or body for the purpose of exercising those functions; or
 - (e) the publication or disclosure of the information or data is to any person who the Bank is satisfied has a proper interest in receiving the information; or
 - (f) the publication or disclosure of the information or data is with the consent of the person to whom the information relates or of the person to whom the information is confidential.
- (2) The Bank must not publish or disclose information or data under subsection (1)(d) or (e) unless the Bank is satisfied that satisfactory provision exists to protect the confidentiality of that information or data.
- (3) An officer or employee of the Bank must not publish or disclose any information or data supplied in accordance with section 156C except for the purposes of, or in connection with, the exercise of powers conferred by this Act.

- (4) An officer or employee of the Bank commits an offence if the officer or employee contravenes this section.
- (5) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156J.

Section 156G: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 42 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

156H Limits on further disclosure of information

- (1) A person to whom any information or data is published or disclosed must not publish, disclose, or use that information or data unless the publication, disclosure, or use is,—
 - (a) in the case of a publication or disclosure under section 156G(1)(c),—
 - (i) for the purposes of, or in connection with, the exercise of powers conferred by this Act; and
 - (ii) in accordance with any conditions that may be imposed by the Bank;
 - (b) in the case of a publication or disclosure under section 156G(1)(e),—
 - (i) authorised by the Bank and in accordance with any conditions that the Bank may have imposed; or
 - (ii) necessary or desirable for the exercise of any function or power conferred by any enactment;
 - (c) in the case of a publication or disclosure under section 156G(1)(f), in accordance with the terms and conditions of the consent referred to in that paragraph.
- (2) A person commits an offence if the person contravenes this section.
- (3) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156J.

Section 156H: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 42 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

156I Application of other enactments to information published or disclosed under section 156G

Nothing in any Act, other than this Act or the Official Information Act 1982, requires the Bank or any person to whom information or data has been published or disclosed under section 156G to make that information or data available to any other person.

Section 156I: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 42 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Penalties for offences against this Part

Heading: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 42 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

156J Penalties for offences

- (1) A person who commits an offence under any of the provisions listed in subsection (2) is liable, on conviction,—
 - (a) in the case of an individual, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 3 months or to a fine not exceeding \$50,000; and
 - (b) in the case of a body corporate, to a fine not exceeding \$500,000.
- (2) The provisions are—
 - (a) section 156D (which relates to failing to supply information relating to a payment system):
 - (b) section 156F (which relates to failing to comply with a requirement for an audit):
 - (c) section 156G (which relates to disclosure of information supplied in accordance with section 156C):
 - (d) section 156H (which relates to further disclosure of information).

Section 156J: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 42 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 156J(1): amended, on 1 July 2013, by section 413 of the Criminal Procedure Act 2011 (2011 No 81).

Part 5C

Designated settlement systems

Part 5C: replaced, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

General

Heading: replaced, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

156K Exercise of powers under this Part

- (1) The powers conferred on the Minister and the Bank by this Part must be exercised for the purposes of—
 - (a) promoting the maintenance of a sound and efficient financial system; and
 - (b) avoiding significant damage to the financial system that could result from the failure of a participant in a settlement system.
- (2) The powers conferred on the Minister responsible for the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013 and the FMA by this Part must be exercised for the purposes of—

- (a) promoting the integrity and effectiveness of settlement systems and related markets in New Zealand; and
 - (b) enhancing the confidence of investors and other market participants in settlement systems and related markets in New Zealand.
- (3) The Governor-General must exercise the powers conferred on him or her by this Part for the purposes set out in subsections (1) and (2).

Section 156K: replaced, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

Section 156K(2): amended, on 1 December 2014, by section 150 of the Financial Markets (Repeals and Amendments) Act 2013 (2013 No 70).

Section 156K(2): amended, on 1 May 2011, by section 84(3) of the Financial Markets Authority Act 2011 (2011 No 5).

156L Limit on FMA's powers in relation to Bank

For the purposes of this Part, the FMA may exercise its powers under subpart 1 of Part 3 of the Financial Markets Authority Act 2011 in relation to the Bank only if, and to the extent that, the Bank is—

- (a) a participant in a settlement system; or
- (b) an operator of a settlement system.

Section 156L: replaced, on 1 May 2011, by section 82 of the Financial Markets Authority Act 2011 (2011 No 5).

Designation

[Repealed]

Heading: repealed, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

156M Definitions for this Part

- (1) In this Part, unless the context otherwise requires,—

contact person, in relation to a settlement system, means the person specified under section 156N(2)(d)

designated settlement system means a settlement system that is declared to be a designated settlement system under section 156N

joint regulators means—

- (a) the Bank; and
- (b) the FMA

Minister responsible for the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013 means the Minister of the Crown who, under the authority of any warrant or with the authority of the Prime Minister, is for the time being responsible for the administration of the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013

netted balance means any amount calculated in accordance with the netting provisions of the rules of a designated settlement system as the net debit pay-

able by, or on behalf of, a participant in the designated settlement system to, or on behalf of, another participant in that system for all or any claims or obligations to which those rules apply

netting means the conversion into 1 net claim or obligation, or the set-off, of different claims or obligations between participants in a settlement system that results from the issue and receipt of settlement instructions involving 2 or more participants in the settlement system or that is otherwise provided for under the rules of the settlement system,—

- (a) whether on a bilateral or multilateral basis; and
- (b) whether or not through the interposition of an operator of the settlement system (whether by novation or otherwise); and
- (c) whether or not the obligations or claims constitute mutual credits, mutual debts, or other mutual dealings; and
- (d) whether or not the obligations or claims are denominated in New Zealand currency

property means personal property

pure payment system means a designated settlement system that is a payment system that is declared to be a pure payment system in accordance with section 156N(3)(d)

rules,—

- (a) in relation to a settlement system, means the rules of the settlement system (whether made under bylaws, agreements, procedures, contracts, or other documents) that are evidenced in writing and that provide, among other things, for—
 - (i) the basis on which settlement instructions are given or received; and
 - (ii) the basis on which settlement obligations are determined and calculated (either on a gross basis or using netting); and
 - (iii) the basis on which settlements are effected (either on a gross basis or using netting); and
 - (iv) any action to be taken if a participant in the settlement system is unable, or likely to become unable, to meet the participant's obligations to any or all of the following:
 - (A) an operator of the settlement system;
 - (B) another participant in the settlement system;
 - (C) any other party to those rules; and
- (b) in relation to a designated settlement system, means the rules of that settlement system that are contained in documents specified in the designation under section 156N; and includes any amendments to those rules that have—

- (i) been notified, not been disallowed, and come into effect in accordance with the processes and the time frames set out in sections 156ZB and 156ZC; or
- (ii) been made pursuant to a variation of a designation under section 156ZD

settlement means—

- (a) the making of a payment or the transfer of the title to, or an interest in, property—
 - (i) that is done in accordance with, or to give effect to, a settlement instruction; and
 - (ii) that is on a gross basis or that uses netting; and
 - (iii) whether by way of book entry on the accounts of a central bank or an operator of a settlement system or otherwise; or
- (b) any other act that discharges an obligation to make a payment or transfer the title to, or an interest in, property in accordance with the rules of a settlement system

settlement instruction means an instruction by a participant in, or to an operator of, a settlement system—

- (a) that is made in accordance with the rules of that settlement system; and
- (b) that results, or is intended to result, in 1 or more settlements being effected

settlement system—

- (a) means a system or arrangement for effecting settlements or processing settlement instructions in accordance with rules; and
- (b) includes a payment system

specified operator means the operator of a settlement system specified in an Order in Council in accordance with section 156N(2)(c).

- (2) In this Part, a participant **becomes subject to an insolvency event** on the date on which, and (if specified) the time at which,—
 - (a) in the case of a company or other body corporate,—
 - (i) a liquidator is appointed in respect of a liquidation under Part 16 of the Companies Act 1993 or under any other Act; or
 - (ii) an administrator is appointed in respect of a voluntary administration under Part 15A of the Companies Act 1993; or
 - (iii) a liquidator is appointed in respect of a liquidation of an overseas company under section 342 of the Companies Act 1993; or
 - (iv) a statutory manager is appointed in respect of a statutory management under Part 3 of the Corporations (Investigation and Management) Act 1989; or

- (v) a statutory manager is appointed in respect of a statutory management under Part 5 of this Act; or
 - (vi) a person is appointed in respect of, or another event occurs that indicates the start of, a process in New Zealand or in any other country in which the company or other body corporate was incorporated, created, or established that is similar to those set out in subparagraphs (i) to (v); and
- (b) in the case of an individual,—
- (i) a person is adjudicated bankrupt under the Insolvency Act 2006 or is given, or determined to have, a similar status (whether in New Zealand or in another country); or
 - (ii) a person is admitted to the no asset procedure in subpart 4 of Part 5 of the Insolvency Act 2006 or becomes subject to a similar procedure (whether in New Zealand or in another country).

Section 156M: replaced, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

Section 156M(1) **Commission**: repealed, on 1 May 2011, by section 82 of the Financial Markets Authority Act 2011 (2011 No 5).

Section 156M(1) **joint regulators** paragraph (b): amended, on 1 May 2011, by section 84(3) of the Financial Markets Authority Act 2011 (2011 No 5).

Section 156M(1) **Minister responsible for the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013**: inserted, on 1 December 2014, by section 150 of the Financial Markets (Repeals and Amendments) Act 2013 (2013 No 70).

Section 156M(1) **Minister responsible for the Securities Act 1978**: repealed, on 1 December 2014, by section 150 of the Financial Markets (Repeals and Amendments) Act 2013 (2013 No 70).

Designation

Heading: inserted, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

156N Designation of settlement system

- (1) The Governor-General may, by Order in Council, on the advice of both the Minister and the Minister responsible for the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013 given in accordance with a joint recommendation of the joint regulators, declare any settlement system to be a designated settlement system.
- (2) The order must specify—
 - (a) the settlement system that is the subject of the designation; and
 - (b) the documents that evidence the rules of that settlement system; and
 - (c) which operator of the settlement system is the specified operator; and
 - (d) the name or title of the person to whom notices relating to that settlement system must be given (the **contact person**).
- (3) The order may also specify all or any of the following:
 - (a) conditions to which the designation is subject:

- (b) that a particular operator is a participant in the settlement system that is the subject of the designation:
 - (c) that the operator specified in accordance with subsection (2)(c) is an operator to whom section 103A of the Personal Property Securities Act 1999 applies:
 - (d) that the settlement system that is the subject of the designation is a pure payment system.
- (4) Both of the joint regulators must, as soon as practicable after a settlement system has been declared to be a designated settlement system, post on their respective Internet sites the contact details and the name or title of the contact person of that designated settlement system.
- (5) However, the FMA does not have to comply with subsection (4) if a settlement system is specified to be a pure payment system in accordance with subsection (3)(d).
- (6) To avoid doubt,—
- (a) *[Repealed]*
 - (b) a breach of a condition to which the designation of a settlement system is subject does not affect the application of section 156Q, 156R, 156T, or 156X of this Act or section 103A of the Personal Property Securities Act 1999.
- (7) An Order in Council under subsection (1) is secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements).

Legislation Act 2019 requirements for secondary legislation made under this section

Publication	PCO must publish it on the legislation website and notify it in the <i>Gazette</i>	LA19 s 69(1)(c)
Presentation	The Minister must present it to the House of Representatives	LA19 s 114, Sch 1 cl 32(1)(a)
Disallowance	It may be disallowed by the House of Representatives	LA19 ss 115 , 116

This note is not part of the Act.

Section 156N: replaced, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

Section 156N(1): amended, on 1 December 2014, by section 150 of the Financial Markets (Repeals and Amendments) Act 2013 (2013 No 70).

Section 156N(5): amended, on 1 May 2011, by section 84(3) of the Financial Markets Authority Act 2011 (2011 No 5).

Section 156N(6)(a): repealed, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

Section 156N(7): inserted, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

Effect of designation

[Repealed]

Heading: repealed, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

156O Joint regulators' recommendations subject to procedure in sections 156Y to 156ZA

The procedure set out in sections 156Y to 156ZA must be followed by the joint regulators when they make a recommendation under section 156N(1).

Section 156O: replaced, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

Effect of designation

Heading: inserted, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

156P Application of this Part to pure payment systems

- (1) If a designated settlement system is specified to be a pure payment system in accordance with section 156N(3)(d), then this Part applies to that designated settlement system as follows:
 - (a) all references to a settlement must be read as if they were references to a settlement as defined in subsection (4); and
 - (b) for the purposes of sections 156K, 156M, and 156ZB to 156ZQ, the Bank is the sole regulator of that settlement system; and
 - (c) all references to the joint regulators in sections 156K, 156M, and 156ZB to 156ZQ must be read as if they were references to the Bank; and
 - (d) anything in sections 156K, 156M, and 156ZB to 156ZQ that may or must be done by both of the joint regulators may or must be done by the Bank alone; and
 - (e) except as set out in subsection (2), in performing its functions and duties and exercising its powers under sections 156K, 156M, and 156ZB to 156ZQ, the Bank does not have to consult with, advise, or give notice to, the FMA; and
 - (f) section 156L does not apply; and
 - (g) the advice of the Minister responsible for the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013 is not required under section 156ZD or 156ZE; and
 - (h) this Part must be interpreted with all necessary modifications in order to give effect to this section.
- (2) However, if the Bank intends to recommend, in accordance with section 156ZD (applied as set out in subsection (1)), that a designated settlement system's designation is varied so that it is no longer specified to be a pure payment

system, the Bank must consult with the FMA before making that recommendation.

- (3) This section ceases to apply to a designated settlement system if, in accordance with section 156ZD (applied as set out in subsection (1)), that settlement system's designation is varied so that it is no longer specified to be a pure payment system.
- (4) For the purposes of subsection (1)(a), **settlement** means—
- (a) the making of a payment—
 - (i) that is done in accordance with, or to give effect to, a settlement instruction; and
 - (ii) that is on a gross basis or that uses netting; and
 - (iii) whether by way of book entry on the accounts of a central bank or an operator of a settlement system or otherwise; or
 - (b) any other act that discharges an obligation to make a payment in accordance with the rules of a settlement system.

Section 156P: replaced, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

Section 156P(1)(e): amended, on 1 May 2011, by section 84(3) of the Financial Markets Authority Act 2011 (2011 No 5).

Section 156P(1)(g): amended, on 1 December 2014, by section 150 of the Financial Markets (Repeals and Amendments) Act 2013 (2013 No 70).

Section 156P(2): amended, on 1 May 2011, by section 84(3) of the Financial Markets Authority Act 2011 (2011 No 5).

156Q Rules of designated settlement system are valid and enforceable

- (1) The rules of a designated settlement system are valid and enforceable despite any enactment or rule of law to the contrary.
- (2) However, subsection (1) applies only to the extent that the rules provide for—
- (a) the basis on which settlement instructions are given or received; and
 - (b) the basis on which settlement obligations are determined and calculated (either on a gross basis or using netting); and
 - (c) the basis on which settlements are effected (either on a gross basis or using netting); and
 - (d) any action to be taken if a participant in the designated settlement system is unable, or likely to become unable, to meet the participant's obligations to any or all of the following:
 - (i) the specified operator of the designated settlement system;
 - (ii) another participant in the designated settlement system;
 - (iii) any other party to those rules.

Section 156Q: replaced, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

156R Settlements must not be reversed, etc

- (1) A settlement that is effected in accordance with the rules of a designated settlement system must not, whether in whole or in part, be reversed, repaid, recovered, or set aside despite any enactment or rule of law to the contrary.
- (2) Subsection (1) extends to any application made to a New Zealand court by a foreign court, foreign representative, or foreign creditor to reverse, repay, recover, or set aside a settlement (whether in whole or in part) that relates to an insolvency (in any form, whether personal or corporate) that is within the jurisdiction of the relevant foreign court, foreign representative, or foreign creditor.
- (3) In this section,—

foreign court means a judicial or other authority competent to control or supervise a foreign proceeding

foreign proceeding means a collective judicial or administrative proceeding in a foreign jurisdiction, including an interim proceeding, under a law relating to insolvency (in any form, whether personal or corporate), in which proceeding the assets and affairs of the debtor are subject to control or supervision by a foreign court, for the purpose of reorganisation or liquidation

foreign representative means a person or body, including one appointed on an interim basis, authorised in a foreign proceeding to administer the reorganisation or the liquidation of the debtor's assets or affairs or to act as a representative of the foreign proceeding.

Compare: 2006 No 57 Schedule 1 Article 2

Section 156R: replaced, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

156S Limits on application of section 156R(1)

- (1) Section 156R(1) does not apply to a settlement that is effected in accordance with the rules of a designated settlement system if—
 - (a) a participant in the designated settlement system in respect of whom the settlement is effected becomes subject to an insolvency event (the **insolvent participant**); and
 - (b) the settlement is effected after the insolvent participant becomes subject to an insolvency event.
- (2) Despite subsection (1), section 156R(1) applies to the settlement if—
 - (a) the settlement is effected within 24 hours after the insolvent participant becomes subject to an insolvency event; or
 - (b) the settlement instruction that gives rise to the settlement is duly authorised on behalf of the insolvent participant after the insolvent participant becomes subject to an insolvency event.

- (3) For the purposes of subsection (2), **authorised on behalf of the insolvent participant** means authorised (either individually or as part of a broader authorisation) by—
- (a) a liquidator appointed under Part 16 of the Companies Act 1993 or under any other Act; or
 - (b) an administrator appointed in accordance with subpart 2 of Part 15A of the Companies Act 1993; or
 - (c) a statutory manager appointed in accordance with section 38 of the Corporations (Investigation and Management) Act 1989; or
 - (d) a statutory manager appointed in accordance with section 117 of this Act; or
 - (e) a person who performs a role similar to those set out in paragraphs (a) to (d) in respect of a process in New Zealand or in any other country in which the insolvent participant was incorporated, created, or established that is similar to those set out in section 156M(2)(a)(i) to (v); or
 - (f) a person who is authorised to do so under any enactment or rule of law of New Zealand or of any other country in which the insolvent participant was incorporated, created, or established; or
 - (g) the Assignee nominated under section 59 of the Insolvency Act 2006 to be the Assignee of a bankrupt's property or any person who performs a similar role in respect of a process (whether in New Zealand or in another country) that is, or is similar to, bankruptcy.

Section 156S: replaced, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

156T Netting is valid and enforceable

If the rules of a designated settlement system provide for netting, any netting in accordance with those rules is valid and enforceable despite any enactment or rule of law to the contrary.

Section 156T: replaced, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

156U Interrelationship between netting and Companies Act 1993 and Insolvency Act 2006

- (1) The following provisions do not apply to any netting in accordance with the rules of a designated settlement system:
- (a) sections 310 to 310O of the Companies Act 1993;
 - (b) sections 254 to 262 of the Insolvency Act 2006.
- (2) However, a netted balance is to be treated as—
- (a) an amount to which section 310(1) of the Companies Act 1993 applies if a company that is in liquidation and another party (both of whom are participants in a designated settlement system) also have mutual credits,

mutual debts, or other mutual dealings between them that are not netted in accordance with the rules of the designated settlement system; and

- (b) an amount to which section 254(1) of the Insolvency Act 2006 applies if the bankrupt (as defined in section 3 of that Act) and another party (both of whom are participants in a designated settlement system) also have mutual credits, mutual debts, or other mutual dealings between them that are not netted in accordance with the rules of the designated settlement system.

Section 156U: replaced, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

Procedure for making designation

[Repealed]

Heading: repealed, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

156V Underlying transactions, settlements, and limits on effect of sections 156Q, 156R, and 156T

- (1) Nothing in section 156Q, 156R, or 156T prevents—
 - (a) the operation of any enactment or rule of law in relation to an underlying transaction (including, without limitation, sections 56, 292, 297, and 298 of the Companies Act 1993 and section 194 of the Insolvency Act 2006); or
 - (b) any party from taking action against another party that has acted fraudulently or dishonestly so long as the remedy sought or obtained in respect of that action does not affect the application of section 156Q, 156R, or 156T.
- (2) If a person brings an action under any enactment or rule of law in relation to an underlying transaction (including, without limitation, sections 56, 292, 297, and 298 of the Companies Act 1993 and section 194 of the Insolvency Act 2006), that person may produce evidence of a settlement before the court for the purpose of proving that—
 - (a) a participant received value by means of that settlement; and
 - (b) the value received was an element of the underlying transaction.
- (3) Nothing in section 292(4A) of the Companies Act 1993 or section 196 of the Insolvency Act 2006 applies to—
 - (a) an underlying transaction; or
 - (b) a settlement that was effected in accordance with the rules of a designated settlement system.
- (4) In this section, **underlying transaction**—
 - (a) means a transaction that gave rise to—

- (i) a settlement; or
 - (ii) a settlement obligation; but
- (b) does not include—
 - (i) a settlement instruction; or
 - (ii) a settlement that was effected in accordance with the rules of a designated settlement system; or
 - (iii) any novation of the obligations of a participant in a designated settlement system that was completed in accordance with the rules of that designated settlement system.

Section 156V: replaced, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

156W Interrelationship with other enactments

- (1) The following enactments prevail over sections 156Q, 156R, and 156T:
 - (a) sections 122(8) and 127(4) of this Act;
 - (b) sections 42(8) and 44(4) of the Corporations (Investigation and Management) Act 1989.
- (2) This Part prevails over the Insolvency (Cross-border) Act 2006.

Section 156W: replaced, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

156X Transfer of property in accordance with rules is effective

- (1) Subsection (2) applies if property is transferred in accordance with the rules of a designated settlement system.
- (2) If this subsection applies, no person may refuse to take an action on the ground that the transfer was not effective.
- (3) Nothing in this section—
 - (a) affects any right a person has to refuse to take an action on any other ground; or
 - (b) derogates from section 45G(3) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Act 1964 (as continued in force by section 84 of the Public Finance Act 1989).
- (4) Section 45I of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Act 1964 (as continued in force by section 84 of the Public Finance Act 1989) must be read subject to this section.
- (5) Except as provided in this section, this section has effect despite anything to the contrary in any enactment, rule of law, constitution, deed, or agreement.

Section 156X: replaced, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

Procedure for making designation

Heading: replaced, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

156Y Application for designation

- (1) A person who wishes to have a settlement system declared to be a designated settlement system may apply to either of the joint regulators.
- (2) A joint regulator must, as soon as practicable, advise the other joint regulator if it receives an application.
- (3) An application must—
 - (a) be accompanied by a copy of the rules of the settlement system; and
 - (b) be accompanied by any information required by either or both of the joint regulators; and
 - (c) set out the contact details and the name or title of the person who is proposed to act as the contact person of the settlement system; and
 - (d) be accompanied by the application fee (if any) that is jointly determined by the joint regulators with the approval of both the Minister and the Minister responsible for the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013.
- (4) The joint regulators may, together, produce guidelines relating to the application procedure.
- (5) A determination under subsection (3)(d) is secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements).

Legislation Act 2019 requirements for secondary legislation made under this section

Publication	The maker must publish it in the <i>Gazette</i>	LA19 ss 73, 74(1)(a), Sch 1 cl 14
Presentation	It is not required to be presented to the House of Representatives because a transitional exemption applies under Schedule 1 of the Legislation Act 2019	LA19 s 114, Sch 1 cl 32(1)(a)
Disallowance	It may be disallowed by the House of Representatives	LA19 ss 115, 116

This note is not part of the Act.

Section 156Y: replaced, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

Section 156Y(3)(d): amended, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

Section 156Y(3)(d): amended, on 1 December 2014, by section 150 of the Financial Markets (Repeals and Amendments) Act 2013 (2013 No 70).

Section 156Y(5): inserted, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

156Z Consideration of application

- (1) Both of the joint regulators must consider any application made in accordance with section 156Y.

- (2) In considering an application, each of the joint regulators may have regard to any or all of the following matters:
- (a) the purpose and scope of the settlement system:
 - (b) the rules of the settlement system:
 - (c) any laws or regulatory requirements relating to the operation of the settlement system and the extent to which the settlement system complies with those laws or regulatory requirements:
 - (d) relevant international standards concerning clearing and settlement systems, to the extent that they are relevant in the circumstances:
 - (e) the capability and capacity of the operators of the settlement system:
 - (f) the financial resources of the settlement system:
 - (g) the importance of the settlement system to the financial system:
 - (h) the impact on creditors of participants in the settlement system of specifying that an operator of the settlement system is an operator to whom section 103A of the Personal Property Securities Act 1999 applies:
 - (i) any other matters that the regulator considers appropriate.
- (3) In considering an application, each of the joint regulators must consider whether the settlement system should be specified to be a pure payment system.
- (4) In considering an application, each of the joint regulators may have regard, or refer, to, and may rely upon, any relevant information, work, or matter held, or produced, by the other joint regulator.

Section 156Z: replaced, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

156ZA Decision on application

- (1) After considering an application, the joint regulators must, together, either—
- (a) make a joint recommendation to both the Minister and the Minister responsible for the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013 that the settlement system to which the application relates be declared to be a designated settlement system under section 156N; or
 - (b) refuse to make that recommendation.
- (2) If subsection (1)(b) applies, the joint regulators must together give notice in writing to the applicant stating—
- (a) that the joint regulators refuse to make a recommendation that the settlement system to which the application relates be declared to be a designated settlement system under section 156N; and
 - (b) the reasons for the joint regulators' refusal.

Section 156ZA: replaced, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

Section 156ZA(1)(a): amended, on 1 December 2014, by section 150 of the Financial Markets (Repeals and Amendments) Act 2013 (2013 No 70).

Amendments to rules

Heading: inserted, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

156ZB Joint regulators must be notified of proposed amendments to rules

- (1) The specified operator of a designated settlement system must, as soon as practicable, notify either of the joint regulators of any amendment that is proposed to be made to the rules of that designated settlement system.
- (2) A joint regulator must, as soon as practicable, advise the other joint regulator if it receives notice of a proposed amendment to the rules of a designated settlement system.

Section 156ZB: replaced, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

156ZC Proposed amendments to rules may be disallowed

- (1) The joint regulators may disallow any amendment that is proposed to be made to the rules of a designated settlement system by giving notice to that effect to the contact person of that designated settlement system on or before the day that is 20 working days after the date on which either of the joint regulators first received notice of the proposed amendment under section 156ZB(1).
- (2) If the joint regulators disallow a proposed amendment in accordance with subsection (1),—
 - (a) the proposed amendment does not come into effect; and
 - (b) the rules of the designated settlement system continue to apply as they did before the amendment was proposed.
- (3) If the joint regulators do not disallow a proposed amendment in accordance with subsection (1), the proposed amendment comes into effect on—
 - (a) the earlier of—
 - (i) the day after the date on which the contact person of the designated settlement system receives notice from the joint regulators that they have decided not to disallow the proposed amendment; or
 - (ii) the day that is 21 working days after the date on which either of the joint regulators first received notice of the proposed amendment under section 156ZB(1); or
 - (b) any later date that is specified as part of the proposed amendment.

Section 156ZC: replaced, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

Variation and revocation of designation

Heading: replaced, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

156ZD Variation of designation

- (1) The Governor-General may, by Order in Council, on the advice of both the Minister and the Minister responsible for the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013 given in accordance with a joint recommendation of the joint regulators, vary any designation made under section 156N—
 - (a) by amending any of the matters referred to in section 156N(2)(b) to (d) and (3)(b) to (d); or
 - (b) by making the designation subject to a requirement that an amendment be made to the documents that evidence the rules of the settlement system that is the subject of the designation; or
 - (c) by revoking or amending any condition to which the designation is subject; or
 - (d) by making the designation subject to a new condition.
- (2) An Order in Council under subsection (1) is secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements).

Legislation Act 2019 requirements for secondary legislation made under this section

Publication	PCO must publish it on the legislation website and notify it in the <i>Gazette</i>	LA19 s 69(1)(c)
Presentation	The Minister must present it to the House of Representatives	LA19 s 114, Sch 1 cl 32(1)(a)
Disallowance	It may be disallowed by the House of Representatives	LA19 ss 115, 116

This note is not part of the Act.

Section 156ZD: replaced, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

Section 156ZD(1): amended, on 1 December 2014, by section 150 of the Financial Markets (Repeals and Amendments) Act 2013 (2013 No 70).

Section 156ZD(2): inserted, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

156ZE Revocation of designation

- (1) The Governor-General may, by Order in Council, on the advice of both the Minister and the Minister responsible for the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013 given in accordance with a joint recommendation of the joint regulators, revoke any designation made under section 156N.
- (2) An Order in Council under subsection (1) is secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements).

Legislation Act 2019 requirements for secondary legislation made under this section

Publication	PCO must publish it on the legislation website and notify it in the <i>Gazette</i>	LA19 s 69(1)(c)
--------------------	--	-----------------

Presentation	The Minister must present it to the House of Representatives	LA19 s 114, Sch 1 cl 32(1)(a)
Disallowance	It may be disallowed by the House of Representatives	LA19 ss 115, 116
<i>This note is not part of the Act.</i>		

Section 156ZE: replaced, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

Section 156ZE(1): amended, on 1 December 2014, by section 150 of the Financial Markets (Repeals and Amendments) Act 2013 (2013 No 70).

Section 156ZE(2): inserted, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

156ZF Settlement and netting not affected by variation or revocation of designation

The variation or revocation of a designation made under section 156N does not affect the application of sections 156Q, 156R, and 156T to settlements that were effected, and netting that took place, before the variation or revocation.

Section 156ZF: inserted, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

156ZG Application for variation or revocation of designation

- (1) A person who wishes to have the designation made under section 156N for a designated settlement system varied or revoked may apply to either of the joint regulators.
- (2) A joint regulator must, as soon as practicable, advise the other joint regulator if it receives an application.
- (3) An application must be accompanied by the application fee (if any) that is jointly determined by the joint regulators with the approval of both the Minister and the Minister responsible for the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013.
- (4) A determination under subsection (3) is secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements).

Legislation Act 2019 requirements for secondary legislation made under this section

Publication	The maker must publish it in the <i>Gazette</i>	LA19 ss 73, 74(1)(a), Sch 1 cl 14
Presentation	It is not required to be presented to the House of Representatives because a transitional exemption applies under Schedule 1 of the Legislation Act 2019	LA19 s 114, Sch 1 cl 32(1)(a)
Disallowance	It may be disallowed by the House of Representatives	LA19 ss 115, 116
<i>This note is not part of the Act.</i>		

Section 156ZG: inserted, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

Section 156ZG(3): amended, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

Section 156ZG(3): amended, on 1 December 2014, by section 150 of the Financial Markets (Repeals and Amendments) Act 2013 (2013 No 70).

Section 156ZG(4): inserted, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

156ZH Either joint regulator may independently begin review of designation

- (1) Either of the joint regulators may, independently of the other joint regulator and without having received an application under section 156ZG, begin a review to determine whether to recommend a variation or revocation of a designation made under section 156N.
- (2) A joint regulator must, as soon as practicable, advise the other joint regulator if it begins a review to determine whether to recommend a variation or revocation of a designation made under section 156N.
- (3) No fee can be charged if a joint regulator begins a review under subsection (1).

Section 156ZH: inserted, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

156ZI Matters joint regulators may have regard to in recommending variation or revocation of designation

- (1) In determining whether to make a recommendation that any designation made under section 156N be varied or revoked, each of the joint regulators may have regard to any or all of the following matters:
 - (a) the purpose and scope of the designated settlement system:
 - (b) the rules of the designated settlement system:
 - (c) any laws or regulatory requirements relating to the operation of the designated settlement system and the extent to which the designated settlement system complies with those laws or regulatory requirements:
 - (d) relevant international standards concerning clearing and settlement systems, to the extent that they are relevant in the circumstances:
 - (e) the capability and capacity of the operators of the settlement system:
 - (f) the financial resources of the settlement system:
 - (g) the importance of the designated settlement system to the financial system:
 - (h) the impact on creditors of participants in the settlement system of specifying, or no longer specifying, that an operator of the settlement system is an operator to whom section 103A of the Personal Property Securities Act 1999 applies:
 - (i) any failure to comply with any condition to which the designation is subject:
 - (j) any failure to comply with the requirements of this Act:
 - (k) any other matters that the joint regulator considers appropriate.
- (2) In determining whether to make a recommendation that any designation made under section 156N be varied or revoked, each of the joint regulators may have

regard, or refer, to, and may rely upon, any relevant information, work, or matter held, or produced, by the other joint regulator.

Section 156ZI: inserted, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

156ZJ Procedure for variation or revocation of designation

- (1) Before making a recommendation that any designation made under section 156N be varied or revoked, the joint regulators must together—
 - (a) give the contact person notice of—
 - (i) the reasons for proposing to vary or revoke the designation; and
 - (ii) the fact that the contact person may make submissions to the joint regulators in relation to the proposed variation or revocation; and
 - (b) give the contact person an opportunity to make those submissions within a time period that the joint regulators consider reasonable in the circumstances; and
 - (c) consider any submissions made by the contact person during that time period.
- (2) The notice referred to in subsection (1)(a) may be given either in writing or orally depending on the circumstances of the particular case.

Section 156ZJ: inserted, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

Obligations to give notice and supply information

Heading: inserted, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

156ZK Contact person must be notified of insolvency event

- (1) This section applies if—
 - (a) a participant in a designated settlement system (**participant A**) becomes subject to an insolvency event;
 - (b) any other participant whose settlements are effected by participant A in accordance with the rules of that designated settlement system becomes subject to an insolvency event.
- (2) If this section applies, participant A must, as soon as practicable after becoming aware of the insolvency event, notify that fact to the contact person of that designated settlement system.
- (3) It is sufficient compliance with the requirement to notify the contact person under subsection (2) if—
 - (a) participant A takes all reasonable steps to comply with that requirement; or
 - (b) the contact person was already aware of the insolvency event by the time participant A had to notify the contact person under that subsection.

Section 156ZK: inserted, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

156ZL Supply of information relating to designated settlement system

- (1) The joint regulators may, by notice in writing, require any or all of the following persons to supply the joint regulators with any information relating to any designated settlement system:
 - (a) the specified operator of the designated settlement system;
 - (b) a participant in the designated settlement system;
 - (c) the contact person of the designated settlement system.
- (2) The joint regulators may exercise the power conferred by subsection (1) only if the joint regulators consider that the information is reasonably required to enable them to perform their functions and duties, or exercise their powers, under this Part.
- (3) A notice under subsection (1) may specify—
 - (a) the periods for which, and the form in which, the information must be supplied; and
 - (b) the manner in which the information must be verified.
- (4) A person commits an offence if the person, without lawful justification or excuse, fails to supply information in accordance with this section.
- (5) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156ZQ.

Section 156ZL: inserted, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

Disclosure of information

Heading: inserted, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

156ZM Disclosure of information between joint regulators

- (1) No obligation as to secrecy or other restriction upon the disclosure of information, whether imposed by an enactment or otherwise, prevents the disclosure of information between either of the following persons:
 - (a) the Bank; and
 - (b) the FMA.
- (2) Subsection (1) only applies to information—
 - (a) obtained for the purposes of the administration of this Part, whether under sections 156Z(4), 156ZI(2), or 156ZL or otherwise; and
 - (b) that is disclosed by the Bank or the FMA in order to enable them to perform their functions and duties, or exercise their powers, under this Part.

Section 156ZM: inserted, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

Section 156ZM(1)(b): amended, on 1 May 2011, by section 84(3) of the Financial Markets Authority Act 2011 (2011 No 5).

Section 156ZM(2)(b): amended, on 1 May 2011, by section 84(3) of the Financial Markets Authority Act 2011 (2011 No 5).

156ZN Disclosure of information to third parties

- (1) The joint regulators may publish or disclose any information or data supplied in accordance with section 156Y(3)(b) or 156ZL only if—
 - (a) the information or data is available to the public under any Act or is otherwise publicly available information; or
 - (b) the information or data is in a statistical or summary form; or
 - (c) the publication or disclosure of the information or data is for the purposes of, or in connection with, the exercise of powers conferred by this Act; or
 - (d) the publication or disclosure of the information or data is to any central bank, authority, or body in any other country that performs functions and duties that correspond with, or are similar to, those conferred on the joint regulators under this Part, and the joint regulators are satisfied that the information or data will be used by that central bank, authority, or body for the purpose of performing those functions or duties; or
 - (e) the publication or disclosure of the information or data is to any person who the joint regulators are satisfied has a proper interest in receiving the information; or
 - (f) the publication or disclosure of the information or data is with the consent of the person to whom the information relates or of the person to whom the information is confidential.
- (2) The joint regulators must not publish or disclose information or data under subsection (1)(d) or (e) unless the joint regulators are satisfied that satisfactory provision exists to protect the confidentiality of that information or data.
- (3) An officer or employee of either of the joint regulators must not publish or disclose any information or data supplied in accordance with section 156Y(3)(b) or 156ZL except for the purposes of, or in connection with, the exercise of powers conferred by this Act.
- (4) An officer or employee of either of the joint regulators commits an offence if the officer or employee contravenes this section.
- (5) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156ZQ.

Section 156ZN: inserted, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

156ZO Limits on further disclosure of information

- (1) A person to whom any information or data is published or disclosed must not publish, disclose, or use that information or data unless the publication, disclosure, or use is,—
 - (a) in the case of a publication or disclosure under section 156ZN(1)(c),—
 - (i) for the purposes of, or in connection with, the exercise of powers conferred by this Act; and
 - (ii) in accordance with any conditions that may be imposed by the joint regulators:
 - (b) in the case of a publication or disclosure under section 156ZN(1)(e),—
 - (i) authorised by the joint regulators and in accordance with any conditions that may be imposed by the joint regulators; or
 - (ii) necessary or desirable for the performance of any function or duty, or the exercise of any power, conferred by any enactment:
 - (c) in the case of a publication or disclosure under section 156ZN(1)(f), in accordance with the terms and conditions (if any) of the consent referred to in that paragraph.
- (2) A person commits an offence if the person contravenes this section.
- (3) The penalty for an offence against this section is set out in section 156ZQ.

Section 156ZO: inserted, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

156ZP Application of other enactments to information published or disclosed under section 156ZN

Nothing in any Act, other than this Act or the Official Information Act 1982, requires the joint regulators or any person to whom information or data has been published or disclosed under section 156ZN to make that information or data available to any other person.

Section 156ZP: inserted, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

Penalties for offences against this Part

Heading: inserted, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

156ZQ Penalties for offences

- (1) A person who commits an offence under any of the provisions listed in subsection (2) is liable, on conviction,—
 - (a) in the case of an individual, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 12 months or to a fine not exceeding \$100,000; or
 - (b) in the case of a body corporate, to a fine not exceeding \$750,000.

- (2) The provisions are—
- (a) section 156ZL (which relates to failing to supply information relating to a designated settlement system):
 - (b) section 156ZN (which relates to disclosure of information supplied in accordance with section 156ZL to third parties):
 - (c) section 156ZO (which relates to limits on further disclosure of information).

Section 156ZQ: inserted, on 24 November 2009, by section 6 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53).

Section 156ZQ(1): amended, on 1 July 2013, by section 413 of the Criminal Procedure Act 2011 (2011 No 81).

Part 5D

Deposit takers

[Repealed]

Part 5D: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

Preliminary provisions

[Repealed]

Heading: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157A Exercise of powers under this Part

[Repealed]

Section 157A: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157B Interpretation

[Repealed]

Section 157B: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157C Deposit taker defined

[Repealed]

Section 157C: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157D Application of Part

[Repealed]

Section 157D: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157E Bank to consult before recommending making of regulations under this Part*[Repealed]*

Section 157E: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157F Principles to be taken into account under this Part*[Repealed]*

Section 157F: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157G Exemptions from Part*[Repealed]*

Section 157G: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157H Effect of exemption*[Repealed]*

Section 157H: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

*Credit ratings**[Repealed]*

Heading: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157I Deposit taker must have current credit rating*[Repealed]*

Section 157I: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157J Bank may approve rating agencies*[Repealed]*

Section 157J: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157K Regulations relating to credit ratings*[Repealed]*

Section 157K: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

Governance requirements

[Repealed]

Heading: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157L Governance requirements

[Repealed]

Section 157L: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

Risk management

[Repealed]

Heading: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157M Deposit taker must have and comply with risk management programme

[Repealed]

Section 157M: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157N Risk management programme must be provided to trustee and must be amended if required by trustee

[Repealed]

Section 157N: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157O Trustee may require deposit taker to have risk management programme audited

[Repealed]

Section 157O: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

Minimum capital requirement

[Repealed]

Heading: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157P Regulations may impose requirement that trust deed sets out minimum capital that deposit taker is required to maintain

[Repealed]

Section 157P: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157Q Deposit takers and trustees must ensure trust deed sets out minimum capital deposit taker is required to maintain*[Repealed]*

Section 157Q: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157R Deposit taker must maintain not less than minimum capital prescribed*[Repealed]*

Section 157R: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

*Capital ratio requirement**[Repealed]*

Heading: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157S Regulations may impose requirement that trust deed includes capital ratio*[Repealed]*

Section 157S: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157T Deposit takers and trustees must ensure capital ratio included in trust deed*[Repealed]*

Section 157T: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157U Deposit taker must maintain capital ratio required to be included in trust deed*[Repealed]*

Section 157U: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

*Restrictions on related party exposures**[Repealed]*

Heading: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157V Regulations may impose requirement that trust deed includes maximum limit on exposures to related parties*[Repealed]*

Section 157V: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157W Regulations may incorporate by reference framework for calculation of maximum limit on exposures to related parties

[Repealed]

Section 157W: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157X Deposit takers and trustees must ensure maximum limit on exposures to related parties is included in trust deed

[Repealed]

Section 157X: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157Y Deposit taker must not exceed maximum limit on related party exposures

[Repealed]

Section 157Y: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

Liquidity requirements

[Repealed]

Heading: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157Z Regulations may impose requirement that liquidity requirements be included in trust deed

[Repealed]

Section 157Z: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157ZA Deposit takers and trustees must ensure liquidity requirements are included in trust deeds

[Repealed]

Section 157ZA: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157ZB Deposit takers must comply with liquidity requirements in trust deeds

[Repealed]

Section 157ZB: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

*Other matters relating to trust deeds**[Repealed]*

Heading: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157ZC Amendment to trust deed must be treated as if authorised to be made*[Repealed]*

Section 157ZC: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157ZD Trustee may execute amendment to trust deed*[Repealed]*

Section 157ZD: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

*Obligations of trustees to Bank**[Repealed]*

Heading: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157ZE Bank may require trustee to attest as to deposit taker's compliance with requirements*[Repealed]*

Section 157ZE: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157ZF Trustee must report to Bank non-compliance or likely non-compliance by deposit taker*[Repealed]*

Section 157ZF: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157ZG Obligation on trustees to disclose information to Bank in certain circumstances*[Repealed]*

Section 157ZG: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157ZH Protection of trustees*[Repealed]*

Section 157ZH: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

Investigation and enforcement powers of Bank

[Repealed]

Heading: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157ZI Bank may require report relating to deposit taker

[Repealed]

Section 157ZI: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157ZJ Power to obtain information and documents

[Repealed]

Section 157ZJ: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157ZK Limitation on information to be provided

[Repealed]

Section 157ZK: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157ZL Limitations on entering and searching place

[Repealed]

Section 157ZL: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157ZM Search warrant may be issued

[Repealed]

Section 157ZM: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157ZN Privileges

[Repealed]

Section 157ZN: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

Confidentiality of information

[Repealed]

Heading: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157ZO Confidentiality of information

[Repealed]

Section 157ZO: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157ZP Person who does not comply with section 157ZO commits offence

[Repealed]

Section 157ZP: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157ZQ Application of Official Information Act 1982, etc

[Repealed]

Section 157ZQ: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

Offences and penalties

[Repealed]

Heading: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157ZR Offences by deposit takers against this Part

[Repealed]

Section 157ZR: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157ZS Other offences by deposit takers against this Part

[Repealed]

Section 157ZS: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157ZT Defence for deposit takers charged with offences against this Part

[Repealed]

Section 157ZT: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157ZU Power of court to discharge deposit taker

[Repealed]

Section 157ZU: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157ZV Liability of directors

[Repealed]

Section 157ZV: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157ZW Offences by trustees against this Part

[Repealed]

Section 157ZW: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157ZX Penalties for offences

[Repealed]

Section 157ZX: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

Miscellaneous

[Repealed]

Heading: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157ZY Matters relating to regulation-making powers under this Part

[Repealed]

Section 157ZY: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

157ZZ Bank must review and report on operation of this Part

[Repealed]

Section 157ZZ: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

Part 6

Financial and accountability matters

Part 6 heading: replaced, on 10 September 2008, by section 21 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 59).

157 Financial year

The Bank's financial year ends on the day on which the Government's financial year ends.

Section 157: replaced, on 25 January 2005, by section 37(1) of the Public Finance Amendment Act 2004 (2004 No 113).

Income and expenditure

158 Meaning of notional surplus income

[Repealed]

Section 158: repealed, on 10 September 2008, by section 18 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 59).

159 Funding agreements

- (1) The Minister and the Governor may enter into a funding agreement that specifies the amount of the Bank's income that may be paid or applied in meeting the operating expenses incurred by the Bank in each financial year in carrying out its functions and exercising its powers under—

- (a) Part 2 (except section 16):

- (b) Parts 3 to 5:
 - (c) Part 5B:
 - (d) Part 5C:
 - (da) *[Repealed]*
 - (e) sections 163, 166, 167, and 190:
 - (ea) the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013:
 - (eb) the Financial Market Infrastructures Act 2021:
 - (f) if the Minister and the Governor agree, any other provision of this Act:
 - (g) any other Act.
- (2) There shall be a funding agreement applying for every financial year and each funding agreement shall apply to a period that comprises 5 consecutive financial years.
- (3) The Minister and the Governor may, from time to time, by agreement—
- (a) vary the provisions of a funding agreement; or
 - (b) terminate a funding agreement and enter into a new funding agreement.

Section 159(1): replaced, on 25 January 2005, by section 37(1) of the Public Finance Amendment Act 2004 (2004 No 113).

Section 159(1)(a): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 30 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 159(1)(da): repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

Section 159(1)(ea): inserted, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

Section 159(1)(eb): inserted, on 11 May 2021, by section 162 of the Financial Market Infrastructures Act 2021 (2021 No 13).

160 Contents of funding agreements

Every funding agreement shall be in writing and—

- (a) shall make provision for the operating expenses to be incurred by the Bank in carrying out the functions and exercising the powers set out in paragraphs (a) to (f) of subsection (1) of section 159:
- (b) shall make provision for such items as may, in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice, properly be taken into account in determining the operating expenses applicable to those functions and powers:
- (c) may provide for the extent, if any, to which any material change in the nature or extent of the work undertaken by the Bank in respect of any of those functions or powers shall require the total level of operating expenses to be redetermined between the Governor and the Minister:
- (d) may make provision for such other matters, not being matters that are inconsistent with this section, as the Governor and the Minister may think fit.

Section 160(a): amended, on 25 January 2005, by section 37(1) of the Public Finance Amendment Act 2004 (2004 No 113).

Section 160(b): amended, on 25 January 2005, by section 37(1) of the Public Finance Amendment Act 2004 (2004 No 113).

Section 160(c): amended, on 25 January 2005, by section 37(1) of the Public Finance Amendment Act 2004 (2004 No 113).

161 Funding agreements to be ratified by House of Representatives

- (1) Within 12 sitting days after a funding agreement is entered into, or a funding agreement is varied, the Minister shall lay a copy of the agreement or the variation before the House of Representatives.
- (2) No funding agreement, and no variation of a funding agreement, shall be effective for the purposes of this Act unless it is ratified by a resolution of the House of Representatives.

162 Determination of annual dividend

- (1) The Bank must, as soon as practicable after the end of each financial year, recommend to the Minister the amount appropriately payable by the Bank to the Crown as an annual dividend in respect of the financial year.
- (2) The Bank must determine the amount it recommends to the Minister under subsection (1) in accordance with the principles set out in its statement of intent.
- (3) The Minister must determine the amount that the Bank must pay to the Crown as an annual dividend in respect of the financial year having regard to—
 - (a) the recommendation of the Bank; and
 - (b) the views of the Board of the Bank; and
 - (c) any other relevant matters.
- (4) The Bank must publish in its annual report—
 - (a) the amount it recommends to the Minister under subsection (1); and
 - (b) the determination made by the Minister under subsection (3).

Section 162: replaced, on 10 September 2008, by section 20 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 59).

Accountability documents

Heading: inserted, on 10 September 2008, by section 22 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 59).

162AA Purpose of accountability documents

The purpose of the 3 accountability documents required under this Part is as follows:

- (a) statement of intent: to promote the public accountability of the Bank by—

- (i) enabling the Crown to participate in the process of setting the Bank's medium-term intentions and undertakings; and
 - (ii) setting out for the House of Representatives those intentions and undertakings; and
 - (iii) providing a base against which the Bank's actual performance can be later assessed:
- (b) annual report: to—
 - (i) report on the activities of the Bank during the previous year; and
 - (ii) assess those activities against the intentions and undertakings set out in the latest statement of intent; and
 - (iii) ensure the accountability of the Bank for the funds available to it:
- (c) financial stability report: to—
 - (i) report on matters relating to the soundness and efficiency of the financial system and other matters associated with the Bank's statutory prudential purposes; and
 - (ii) allow assessments to be made of the effectiveness of the Bank's use of its powers to achieve its statutory prudential purposes.

Compare: 2004 No 115 s 138

Section 162AA: inserted, on 10 September 2008, by section 22 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 59).

162AB Assessment of regulatory impacts of policies

- (1) The Bank must—
 - (a) assess the expected regulatory impacts of any policy that it intends to adopt under any of the following:
 - (i) Part 5:
 - (ii) the Insurance (Prudential Supervision) Act 2010:
 - (iii) the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013:
 - (iv) the Financial Market Infrastructures Act 2021; and
 - (b) assess the regulatory impacts of the policies adopted under the enactments listed in paragraph (a)(i) to (iv) at intervals appropriate to the nature of the policy being assessed; and
 - (c) give reports on the assessments to the Minister.
- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply in respect of any policy that is of a minor or technical nature.
- (3) The Bank may provide reports on the assessments of regulatory impacts to the Minister—
 - (a) as part of an accountability document or other report; or

- (b) as a stand-alone report prepared following a request by the Minister or on the Bank's own initiative.
- (4) The Bank must publish every report on the assessment of regulatory impacts on an Internet site maintained by, or on behalf of, the Bank.
- (5) However, the Bank may omit information from any report published if it is satisfied on reasonable grounds that it is proper to omit the information on the ground of commercial confidentiality relating to a financial institution.
- (6) To avoid doubt, the publication of an accountability document that includes a report on the assessments of regulatory impacts satisfies the obligation in subsection (4).

Section 162AB: inserted, on 10 September 2008, by section 22 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 59).

Section 162AB(1)(a): replaced, on 11 May 2021, by section 162 of the Financial Market Infrastructures Act 2021 (2021 No 13).

Section 162AB(1)(b): replaced, on 11 May 2021, by section 162 of the Financial Market Infrastructures Act 2021 (2021 No 13).

Statement of intent

Heading: inserted, on 10 September 2008, by section 23 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 59).

162A Obligation to provide statement of intent

The Bank must, in each financial year, provide to the Minister a statement of intent for the Bank and its subsidiaries for that financial year and at least the next 2 financial years.

Section 162A: inserted, on 25 January 2005, by section 37(1) of the Public Finance Amendment Act 2004 (2004 No 113).

162B Content of statement of intent

- (1) Each statement of intent must contain the following information for the full period to which it relates:
 - (a) key background information about the Bank and its operating environment:
 - (b) the nature and scope of the Bank's functions and its principal areas of operation:
 - (c) the specific impacts, outcomes, or objectives that the Bank seeks to achieve or contribute to:
 - (d) how the Bank (whether acting itself or through the MPC) intends to perform its functions and conduct its operations to achieve those impacts, outcomes, or objectives:
 - (da) if a direction has been given under section 68B, how the Bank has had regard to the direction:

- (e) the proposed strategies for managing the organisational health and capability of the Bank;
 - (f) a statement of the projected income and expenditure for the first financial year in the period to which the statement of intent relates;
 - (g) a statement of the principles in accordance with which the Bank must determine the amount it recommends to the Minister as appropriately payable by the Bank to the Crown as an annual dividend;
 - (h) the main financial and non-financial measures and standards by which the future performance of the Bank may be judged;
 - (i) the matters on which the Bank will consult or notify the Minister before making a decision, the matters on which it will report to its Minister, and the frequency of reporting;
 - (j) any other matters that are reasonably necessary to achieve an understanding of the Bank's intentions and direction.
- (2) Each statement of intent must be dated and signed by the Governor and the Deputy Governor.

Section 162B: inserted, on 25 January 2005, by section 37(1) of the Public Finance Amendment Act 2004 (2004 No 113).

Section 162B(1)(c): replaced, on 10 September 2008, by section 24(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 59).

Section 162B(1)(d): replaced, on 10 September 2008, by section 24(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 59).

Section 162B(1)(d): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 31(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Section 162B(1)(da): inserted, on 10 September 2008, by section 24(1) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 59).

Section 162B(1)(g): inserted, on 10 September 2008, by section 24(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 59).

Section 162B(1)(h): inserted, on 10 September 2008, by section 24(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 59).

Section 162B(1)(i): inserted, on 10 September 2008, by section 24(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 59).

Section 162B(1)(j): inserted, on 10 September 2008, by section 24(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 59).

Section 162B(2): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 31(2) of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

162C Process for providing statement of intent to Minister

- (1) To provide a statement of intent under section 162A, the Bank must—
- (a) prepare a draft statement of intent and provide it to the Minister not later than 30 days before the start of each financial year; and
 - (b) consider the Minister's comments (if any) on the draft and provide the final statement of intent to the Minister on or before the start of the financial year.

- (2) If the Minister's comments include comment on the financial sector regulatory outcomes set out in the Bank's draft statement of intent, the Bank must, when providing its final statement of intent to the Minister, also provide a response to the Minister's comments that demonstrates how the Bank has taken those comments into account in formulating its objectives.

Section 162C: inserted, on 25 January 2005, by section 37(1) of the Public Finance Amendment Act 2004 (2004 No 113).

Section 162C(2): inserted, on 10 September 2008, by section 25 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 59).

162D Amendments by Bank to statement of intent

- (1) The Bank must amend its statement of intent if any matters arise that significantly affect or alter the information contained in the statement that relates to section 162B(1)(b), (d), or (e).
- (2) To amend its statement of intent, the Bank must—
- (a) provide a draft amendment to the Minister; and
 - (b) consider the Minister's comments (if any) and provide the final amendment to the Minister as soon as practicable.

Section 162D: inserted, on 25 January 2005, by section 37(1) of the Public Finance Amendment Act 2004 (2004 No 113).

162E Statement of intent stands referred to House of Representatives

A final statement of intent and any amendments to it that have been provided to the Minister stand referred, by virtue of this section, to the House of Representatives.

Section 162E: inserted, on 25 January 2005, by section 37(1) of the Public Finance Amendment Act 2004 (2004 No 113).

Annual reports

Heading: inserted, on 10 September 2008, by section 26 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 59).

163 Annual reports and accounts

- (1) Within 3 months after the end of each financial year the Bank must deliver to the Minister—
- (a) a report on the operations of the Bank and its subsidiaries during the financial year; and
 - (b) audited financial statements for the Bank for the financial year and, if the Bank has any subsidiaries, audited consolidated financial statements for the Bank and its subsidiaries for that year; and
 - (c) the auditor's report on those financial statements.
- (2) The report must contain—

- (aaa) an assessment against the intentions, measures, and standards set out in the statement of intent prepared at the beginning of the financial year; and
 - (a) information on the remuneration, compensation, and other benefits (including indemnities and insurance cover) provided or granted, during the financial year, to—
 - (i) each member of the Board or a committee of the Board (whose identity must be disclosed in the report for the purposes of this section); and
 - (ii) employees of the Bank (any of whose identity must not be disclosed in the report); and
 - (b) any other matters that the Bank is required, has undertaken, or wishes to report on in its annual report; and
 - (c) if the Board agrees, the Board's report prepared in accordance with section 53A; and
 - (d) any other information that is necessary, in conjunction with any reports published under section 15C or 15D, to enable an informed assessment to be made of the Bank's performance in carrying out its functions during the financial year.
- (3) The documents delivered to the Minister under subsection (1) stand referred, by virtue of this section, to the House of Representatives.

Section 163: replaced, on 25 January 2005, by section 37(1) of the Public Finance Amendment Act 2004 (2004 No 113).

Section 163(2)(aaa): inserted, on 10 September 2008, by section 27 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 59).

Section 163(2)(d): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 32 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

163A Bank not Crown entity

The Bank is not a Crown entity for the purposes of the Crown Entities Act 2004.

Section 163A: inserted, on 25 January 2005, by section 37(1) of the Public Finance Amendment Act 2004 (2004 No 113).

164 Contents of financial statements

- (1) The financial statements shall be prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice and shall include—
- (a) a statement of the Bank's financial position at its balance date;
 - (b) an operating statement reflecting the revenue and expenses of the Bank for that year by reference to the functions carried out by the Bank;
 - (c) a statement of cash flows reflecting the Bank's cash flow for that year;
 - (d) a statement of the Bank's commitments as at the balance date;

- (e) a statement of the Bank's contingent liabilities as at the balance date:
 - (f) a statement of accounting policies:
 - (g) such other statements as are necessary to fairly reflect the financial operations of the Bank for that year and its financial position at the end of that year:
 - (h) comparative actual figures for the previous financial year for paragraphs (a) to (e) and, where appropriate, paragraph (g).
- (2) The financial statements shall show separately—
- (a) any payments made by the Bank under section 21(1); and
 - (b) any payments made by the Minister to the Bank under section 21(2).

165 Management statements

- (1) The financial statements of the Bank shall be accompanied by a management statement signed by the Governor and the Deputy Governor.
- (2) The management statement shall comprise:
- (a) a statement of the management's responsibility for the preparation of the annual financial statements and the judgments used in them:
 - (b) a statement of the management's responsibility for establishing and maintaining a system of internal control designed to provide reasonable assurance as to the integrity and reliability of financial reporting:
 - (c) a statement that, in the opinion of the management, the annual financial statements for the financial year fairly reflect the financial position and operations of the Bank.

Section 165(1): amended, on 1 April 2019, by section 33 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Financial stability reports

Heading: inserted, on 10 September 2008, by section 28 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 59).

165A Financial stability reports

- (1) The Bank must, not less than twice in every calendar year,—
- (a) deliver a financial stability report to the Minister; and
 - (b) publish the report on an Internet site maintained by, or on behalf of, the Bank.
- (2) A financial stability report must—
- (a) report on the soundness and efficiency of the financial system and other matters associated with the Bank's statutory prudential purposes; and
 - (b) contain the information necessary to allow an assessment to be made of the activities undertaken by the Bank to achieve its statutory prudential purposes under this Act and any other enactment.

- (3) The Minister must, as soon as practicable after receiving the report, present it to the House of Representatives.

Section 165A: inserted, on 10 September 2008, by section 28 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 59).

Audits

Heading: inserted, on 10 September 2008, by section 29 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 59).

166 Auditor-General to be auditor of Bank

The Bank is a public entity as defined in section 4 of the Public Audit Act 2001 and, in accordance with that Act, the Auditor-General is its auditor.

Section 166: replaced, on 1 July 2001, by section 53 of the Public Audit Act 2001 (2001 No 10).

167 Performance audit

- (1) The Minister may, from time to time, appoint 1 or more persons (whether as individuals or as members from time to time of any firm or firms) to carry out an assessment of the performance by the Bank of its functions and of the exercise by the Bank of its powers under this Act.
- (2) As soon as practicable after completing an assessment the person appointed shall submit a report to the Minister setting out the results of that assessment.
- (3) The report stands referred, by virtue of this section, to the House of Representatives.
- (4) A person appointed to conduct an assessment under this section, for the purpose of conducting that assessment,—
- (a) shall have full access to all books and documents that are the property of or that are under the control of any person relating to the Bank or its affairs:
 - (b) may require any director, officer or employee of the Bank or any other person to answer any question relating to the Bank or its affairs:
 - (c) may, by notice in writing to any person, require that person to deliver any books or documents relating to the Bank or its affairs in the possession or under the control of that person and may take copies of them or extracts from them.
- (5) Nothing in subsection (4) limits or affects section 105.
- (6) The fees of the person appointed to carry out an assessment under this section shall be paid out of the funds of the Bank.

Section 167(3): replaced, on 25 January 2005, by section 37(1) of the Public Finance Amendment Act 2004 (2004 No 113).

Part 7

Miscellaneous provisions

168 Bank to be good employer

The Bank shall operate a personnel policy containing provisions generally accepted as necessary for the fair and proper treatment of employees in all aspects of their employment, including provisions requiring—

- (a) good and safe working conditions; and
- (b) an equal opportunities employment programme; and
- (c) the impartial selection of suitably qualified persons for appointment; and
- (d) opportunities for the enhancement of the abilities of individual employees.

Compare: 1986 No 124 s 4(1)(b), (2)

169 Bank to exhibit sense of social responsibility

It shall be an objective of the Bank to exhibit a sense of social responsibility in exercising its powers under this Act.

Compare: 1986 No 124 s 4(1)(c)

170 Application of Banking Act 1982 to Bank

[Repealed]

Section 170: repealed, on 30 June 1995, by section 2(4) of the Banking Act Repeal Act 1995 (1995 No 32).

171 Conflict with other Acts

If there is any conflict between this Act and the provisions of the Banking Act 1982, or of any other Act relating to any bank or to the business of banking, the provisions of this Act shall prevail.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 48

172 Obligations under this Act not limited

An obligation or limitation imposed on a person by any other Act or instrument or by any trust or agreement shall not prevent or excuse that person from complying with any provision of this Act or any regulation made under it or with any direction, notice, requirement or condition given or imposed under that provision.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 49

173 Regulations

- (1) The Governor-General may from time to time, by Order in Council, make regulations for all or any of the following purposes:

- (a) providing for such matters as are necessary to enable the Minister or the Bank to exercise any powers and functions conferred on the Minister or the Bank by this Act or by any regulations made for any of the purposes of this Act:
- (b) providing for the granting, refusal, and revocation of consents, permissions, and exemptions in respect of any matters to which any regulations made under this Act relate; and authorising the imposition, variation, and revocation of conditions subject to which such consents, permissions, and exemptions may be granted:
- (c) providing for the furnishing of information and the production of books or documents to the Minister or the Bank or any other person for any of the purposes of any such regulations (whether or not the effect of doing so may be to require the furnishing of information, or the production of books or documents, that will reveal the identity or affairs of any particular person); and providing for the verification of any such information; and providing that any such books or documents may be copied, and may be retained or impounded, by any person or persons to whom they are produced:
- (d) authorising the Minister or the Bank or any other person to exercise any discretionary power or authority for the purposes of any such regulations:
- (e) providing for the delegation of any of the powers or functions of the Minister (including the power of delegation) or the Bank under any such regulations:
- (f) providing for and regulating the issue, registration, transfer, control, and redemption of any financial products issued by the Bank:
- (fa) prescribing information for the purposes of section 69(2A)(c):
- (fb) prescribing entities and classes of entities for the purposes of the definition of qualifying counterparty in section 122A:
- (fc) providing for when collateral must or must not be taken to be in the possession or under the control of a person for the purposes of section 122(9A)(b) or any enactment that applies section 122B (and those matters may be specified with reference to different kinds of collateral or any other circumstances):
- (fd) providing that section 122B(1)(a)(i), (b), or (c) does not apply to specified kinds of collateral or in any other specified circumstances:
- (g) prescribing forms for the purposes of this Act or of any such regulations, in any case where a form is not prescribed by this Act:
- (h) providing for and regulating the giving or service of notices for the purposes of this Act or of any such regulations, and the effect of such notices:

- (i) prescribing fees to be charged by the Bank in respect of any matter under this Act;
 - (j) prescribing offences against any such regulations, and prescribing fines not exceeding in respect of any such offence \$5,000 and, in the case of a continuing offence, \$200 for every day on which the offence has continued;
 - (k) providing for such matters as are contemplated by or necessary for giving full effect to the provisions of this Act and for its due administration.
- (2) Regulations under subsection (1)(fb) to (fd) must be made on the recommendation of—
 - (a) the Minister; and
 - (b) the Minister of the Crown who, under the authority of any warrant or with the authority of the Prime Minister, is responsible for the administration of the Companies Act 1993.
- (3) The Ministers may make a recommendation under subsection (2) only if the Ministers have—
 - (a) had regard to the matters set out in subsection (4); and
 - (b) consulted the persons (or representatives of the persons) that the Ministers consider will be substantially affected by the regulations, and those persons have had the opportunity to comment to the Ministers.
- (4) The Ministers must have regard to the following under subsection (3)(a):
 - (a) the purposes of this Act, the Companies Act 1993, the Corporations (Investigation and Management) Act 1989, the Personal Property Securities Act 1999, the Property Law Act 2007, and the Receiverships Act 1993;
 - (b) the effect of the regulations on—
 - (i) the maintenance of a sound and efficient financial system; and
 - (ii) the creditors of qualifying counterparties; and
 - (iii) the integrity of statutory management, corporate insolvency, and personal property securities law.
- (5) Regulations under this section—
 - (a) are secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements); and
 - (b) if they are made in reliance on section 152, must be confirmed by an Act (*see* subpart 3 of Part 5 of the Legislation Act 2019).

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 50; 1977 No 68 s 6

Legislation Act 2019 requirements for secondary legislation made under this section

Publication PCO must publish it on the legislation website and notify it in the *Gazette* LA19 s 69(1)(c)

Presentation	The Minister must present it to the House of Representatives	LA19 s 114, Sch 1 cl 32(1)(a)
Disallowance	It may be disallowed by the House of Representatives	LA19 ss 115, 116
<i>This note is not part of the Act.</i>		

Section 173(1)(f): amended, on 1 December 2014, by section 150 of the Financial Markets (Repeals and Amendments) Act 2013 (2013 No 70).

Section 173(1)(fa): inserted, on 4 September 2013, by section 5 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2013 (2013 No 62).

Section 173(1)(fb): inserted, on 31 August 2019, by section 7(1) of the Financial Markets (Derivatives Margin and Benchmarking) Reform Amendment Act 2019 (2019 No 46).

Section 173(1)(fc): inserted, on 31 August 2019, by section 7(1) of the Financial Markets (Derivatives Margin and Benchmarking) Reform Amendment Act 2019 (2019 No 46).

Section 173(1)(fd): inserted, on 31 August 2019, by section 7(1) of the Financial Markets (Derivatives Margin and Benchmarking) Reform Amendment Act 2019 (2019 No 46).

Section 173(2): inserted, on 31 August 2019, by section 7(2) of the Financial Markets (Derivatives Margin and Benchmarking) Reform Amendment Act 2019 (2019 No 46).

Section 173(3): inserted, on 31 August 2019, by section 7(2) of the Financial Markets (Derivatives Margin and Benchmarking) Reform Amendment Act 2019 (2019 No 46).

Section 173(4): inserted, on 31 August 2019, by section 7(2) of the Financial Markets (Derivatives Margin and Benchmarking) Reform Amendment Act 2019 (2019 No 46).

Section 173(5): inserted, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

174 Consents under regulations

- (1) If a transaction is entered into or an instrument is executed without the prior consent of the Minister or the Bank required by any regulations made under this Act, the Minister or the Bank, as the case may be, may, at any time, consent to the entry into the transaction or the execution of the instrument.
- (2) Subject to the terms of the consent, any transaction, or instrument, and any relationship, or interests created by it, which would be invalid or unenforceable without that consent, shall, on the giving of that consent, be valid or enforceable as if the consent had been given before the transaction was entered into or the instrument executed.
- (3) Consent may be given—
 - (a) in respect of such transactions, instruments, or persons or classes of transactions, instruments, or persons as the Minister or the Bank may determine, or in respect of any specified transaction, instrument, or person:
 - (b) wholly or partly and either unconditionally or subject to such conditions as the Minister or the Bank thinks fit.
- (4) A consent to the entry into any transaction or the execution of any instrument shall be deemed to be a consent given under the regulations requiring consent.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 50A; 1968 No 135 s 3; 1970 No 2 s 3

175 Offences against regulations

- (1) Every person commits an offence against this Act who—
 - (a) with intent to deceive, makes any false or misleading statement or any material omission in—
 - (i) any offer or declaration made for the purposes of any regulations under this Act; or
 - (ii) any communication with, or application to, the Minister or the Bank or any other person (whether in writing or otherwise) for the purposes of those regulations:
 - (b) resists, obstructs, or deceives any person who is exercising or attempting to exercise any power or function under any such regulations:
 - (c) without lawful excuse, acts in contravention of, or fails to comply in any respect with, any provision of any such regulations or any direction, notice, requirement, or condition given or imposed under any such regulations.
- (2) Nothing in subsection (1) limits section 173(j).

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 51

175A Privilege against self-incrimination no excuse

A person is not excused from answering any question, supplying any information, producing any document, or providing any explanation under this Act on the ground that to do so would or might incriminate or tend to incriminate that person.

Section 175A: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 44 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

175B Admissibility of self-incriminating statements

- (1) A self-incriminating statement made orally by a person (whether or not the statement is recorded in writing) in the course of answering any question, or supplying any information, or producing any document, or providing any explanation, may be used in evidence against that person only in a prosecution for any offence where the person gives evidence inconsistent with the statement.
- (2) Despite subsection (1), any statement made in relation to—
 - (a) a refusal or failure to answer any question, supply any information, produce any document, provide any explanation, or comply with any other requirement may be used in evidence against that person in a prosecution for any offence under this Act arising from that refusal or failure:
 - (b) the answering of any question in a way that is false or misleading in a material particular, or the supply of any information, or the production of any document, or the provision of any explanation that is false or mis-

leading in a material particular, may be used in evidence against that person in a prosecution for any offence under this Act arising from that act.

Section 175B: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 44 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

176 Penalties for offences

Every person who commits an offence against this Act for which no penalty is provided except in this section is liable on conviction—

- (a) in the case of an individual, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 12 months, or to a fine not exceeding \$10,000;
- (b) in the case of a body corporate, to a fine not exceeding \$25,000.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 52(1); 1977 No 68 s 7(1)

Section 176: amended, on 1 July 2013, by section 413 of the Criminal Procedure Act 2011 (2011 No 81).

Section 176: amended, on 24 March 1995, by section 10 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1995 (1995 No 5).

177 Time for filing charging document

Despite anything to the contrary in section 25 of the Criminal Procedure Act 2011, the limitation period in respect of an offence against this Act,—

- (a) in the case of an offence against section 28 or 30, ends on the date that is 3 years after the date on which the offence was committed; or
- (b) in any other case, ends on the date that is 6 years after the date on which the offence was committed.

Section 177: replaced, on 1 July 2013, by section 413 of the Criminal Procedure Act 2011 (2011 No 81).

178 Evidence

- (1) A copy of a decision of the Bank or the MPC certified by the Governor to be correct is, in the absence of proof to the contrary, sufficient evidence of the decision in any proceeding.
- (2) A certificate signed by the Governor to the effect that—
 - (a) any approval or consent required under any Act has or has not been given by the Bank, or is or is not for the time being in force; or
 - (b) any document has been duly signed by, or on behalf of, the Bank or the Governor—

shall, in the absence of proof to the contrary, be sufficient evidence of the matters stated in it in any proceedings.

- (3) Any certificate purporting to have been signed by the Governor shall, in the absence of proof to the contrary, be deemed for all purposes to have been duly signed by the Governor.

Compare: 1964 No 134 s 52B; 1977 No 68 s 8

Section 178(1): replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 34 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

179 Protection from liability

- (1) This section applies to—
 - (a) every statutory manager of a registered bank or of an associated person of a registered bank; and
 - (b) every officer or employee of the Bank; and
 - (c) every person appointed under section 66E or section 99 or section 101; and
 - (d) every director of the Bank.
- (2) No person to whom this section applies is personally liable for an act done or omitted to be done in the exercise or performance in good faith of that person's functions, duties, or powers under this Act.

Section 179: replaced, on 21 August 2003, by section 46 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 179(1)(c): amended, on 1 November 2006, by section 9 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2006 (2006 No 51).

Section 179(1)(d): inserted, on 1 November 2006, by section 9 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2006 (2006 No 51).

179A Indemnity

- (1) The Crown indemnifies the persons listed in subsection (2) for any liability that arises from the exercise or purported exercise of, or omission to exercise, any power conferred by this Act unless it is shown that the exercise or purported exercise of, or omission to exercise, the power was in bad faith.
- (2) The persons are—
 - (a) every statutory manager of a registered bank or of an associated person of a registered bank;
 - (b) every officer or employee of the Bank;
 - (c) every person appointed under section 66E or section 99 or section 101;
 - (d) every member of an advisory committee;
 - (e) the Bank;
 - (f) every director of the Bank.
- (3) Any money required for the purposes of this section must be paid out of a Crown Bank Account without further appropriation than this section.
- (4) The indemnity conferred by subsection (1) extends to legal costs incurred in defending a proceeding.
- (5) Within 12 sitting days of the making of any payment under this section, the Minister must present to the House of Representatives a report which contains details of the circumstances giving rise to the liability of the Crown, the

amount of the payment, the person to whom the payment was made and any other relevant matters.

Section 179A: inserted, on 21 August 2003, by section 47 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46).

Section 179A(2)(f): inserted, on 1 November 2006, by section 10 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2006 (2006 No 51).

Section 179A(3): amended, on 25 January 2005, pursuant to section 65R(3) of the Public Finance Act 1989 (1989 No 44).

180 Amendment to Income Tax Act 1976

[Repealed]

Section 180: repealed, on 1 April 1995, by section YB 3(1) of the Income Tax Amendment Act 1994 (1994 No 164).

181 Amendments to Securities Act 1978

[Repealed]

Section 181: repealed, on 1 April 2019, by section 35 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

182 Amendments to Superannuation Schemes Act 1989

[Repealed]

Section 182: repealed, on 1 April 2019, by section 35 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

183 Amendments to Trustee Banks Restructuring Act 1988

[Repealed]

Section 183: repealed, on 21 May 1999, by section 5 of the Trustee Banks Restructuring Act Repeal Act 1999 (1999 No 53).

184 Amendment to Securities Amendment Act 1988

[Repealed]

Section 184: repealed, on 1 April 2019, by section 35 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

185 Consequential amendments

[Repealed]

Section 185: repealed, on 1 April 2019, by section 35 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

186 Repeals and savings

[Repealed]

Section 186: repealed, on 1 April 2019, by section 35 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

187 References to trading banks to be read as references to registered banks

Every reference in any other Act to the expression “trading bank” shall be read as a reference to a registered bank.

Compare: 1986 No 131 s 15

188 Savings

[Repealed]

Section 188: repealed, on 1 April 2019, by section 35 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

189 Procedure for applying this Act to persons subject to statutory management under Reserve Bank of New Zealand Act 1964

[Repealed]

Section 189: repealed, on 1 April 2019, by section 35 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

190 Transitional provisions in relation to Part 5A and Part 5C of Reserve Bank of New Zealand Act 1964

[Repealed]

Section 190: repealed, on 1 April 2019, by section 35 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

191 Transitional provisions in relation to office holders

[Repealed]

Section 191: repealed, on 1 April 2019, by section 35 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

192 Transitional provision in relation to accounts of Bank

[Repealed]

Section 192: repealed, on 1 April 2019, by section 35 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Schedule 1

Transitional, savings, and related provisions

s 3A

Schedule 1: replaced, on 21 December 2018, by section 36 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Contents

Page

Part 1

Provisions relating to Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018

1	Interpretation	218
2	First remit for MPC	219
3	First remit issued with agreement	219
4	First remit issued without agreement	219
5	First charter	220
6	First charter issued with agreement	220
7	First charter issued without agreement	220
8	First code of conduct	220
9	First appointment of external and internal members	221
10	First Treasury observer	221
11	Minimum number of meetings of MPC	221
12	Transitional provisions for office holders	221

Part 2

Provision relating to Financial Markets (Derivatives Margin and Benchmarking) Reform Amendment Act 2019

13	Provision relating to enforcing security interest over collateral for qualifying derivative	222
----	---	-----

Part 1

Provisions relating to Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018

1 Interpretation

- (1) In this Part, unless the context otherwise requires, references to provisions are references to provisions as inserted or amended by the 2018 Act.
- (2) In this Part, unless the context otherwise requires,—

2018 Act means the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018

date of the Royal assent means the date of the Royal assent of the 2018 Act

main commencement means the commencement of the rest of the 2018 Act under section 2(2) of that Act.

- (3) If a provision that is applied for the purposes of this Part comes into force on the main commencement, that provision applies for those purposes as if it were in force.

2 First remit for MPC

- (1) Despite section 10(1), the first remit is to be issued in accordance with clause 3 or 4.
- (2) The following apply with all necessary modifications to the first remit (whether issued under clause 3 or 4):
- (a) section 10(2) to (4):
 - (b) clauses 4, 6, and 7 of Schedule 2.
- (3) Clause 5 of Schedule 2 applies with all necessary modifications to a first remit issued under clause 3.
- (4) The first remit comes into force on the main commencement.

3 First remit issued with agreement

- (1) The Minister must issue the first remit after reaching agreement on the contents of the remit with the Governor.
- (2) The Minister and the Governor must take all reasonable steps to ensure that the remit is issued before the expiry of the 2-month period that starts on the date of the Royal assent.
- (3) Subclause (1) ceases to apply if the first remit is, instead, issued under clause 4.

4 First remit issued without agreement

- (1) The Governor-General may, by Order in Council made on the recommendation of the Minister, issue the first remit.
- (2) The Minister may make a recommendation if the Minister is satisfied that the Minister and the Governor have not agreed on the content of the first remit before the expiry of the 2-month period that starts on the date of the Royal assent.
- (3) An order under this clause is secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements).

Legislation Act 2019 requirements for secondary legislation made under this clause

Publication	PCO must publish it on the legislation website and notify it in the <i>Gazette</i>	LA19 s 69(1)(c)
Presentation	The Minister must present it to the House of Representatives	LA19 s 114, Sch 1 cl 32(1)(a)
Disallowance	It may be disallowed by the House of Representatives	LA19 ss 115, 116

This note is not part of the Act.

Schedule 1 clause 4(3): inserted, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

5 First charter

- (1) The first charter is to be issued in accordance with clause 6 or 7.
- (2) Sections 63D(2), 63E, 63F, 63H, and 63I apply with all necessary modifications to the first charter (whether issued under clause 6 or 7).
- (3) The first charter comes into force on the main commencement.

6 First charter issued with agreement

- (1) The first charter must be issued by agreement between the Minister and the Governor (rather than between the Minister and the MPC).
- (2) The Minister and the Governor must take all reasonable steps to ensure that the first charter is agreed before the expiry of the 2-month period that starts on the date of the Royal assent.
- (3) Subclause (1) ceases to apply if the first charter is, instead, issued under clause 7.

7 First charter issued without agreement

- (1) The Governor-General may, by Order in Council made on the recommendation of the Minister, issue the first charter.
- (2) The Minister may make a recommendation if the Minister is satisfied that the Minister and the Governor have not agreed on the first charter before the expiry of the 2-month period that starts on the date of the Royal assent.
- (3) An order under this clause is secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements).

Legislation Act 2019 requirements for secondary legislation made under this clause

Publication	PCO must publish it on the legislation website and notify it in the <i>Gazette</i>	LA19 s 69(1)(c)
Presentation	The Minister must present it to the House of Representatives	LA19 s 114, Sch 1 cl 32(1)(a)
Disallowance	It may be disallowed by the House of Representatives	LA19 ss 115, 116

This note is not part of the Act.

Schedule 1 clause 7(3): inserted, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

8 First code of conduct

- (1) The Bank must—
 - (a) prepare the first code of conduct for the members of the MPC; and
 - (b) submit that code to the Board for approval before the expiry of the 1-month period that starts on the date of the Royal assent.
- (2) The Board may give its approval only if it is satisfied that the first code adequately addresses the matters in section 63K.

- (3) The Bank and the Board must take all reasonable steps to ensure that the first code of conduct is prepared, approved, and in force before the expiry of the 2-month period that starts on the date of the Royal assent.
- (4) Sections 63J(4), 63K, and 63L apply with all necessary modifications to the first code of conduct.

9 First appointment of external and internal members

- (1) The first internal and external members of the MPC may be appointed by the Minister before the main commencement (with the appointment in each case to take effect on that commencement).
- (2) Section 63C and clauses 1, 8 to 13, and 15 of Schedule 2 apply for that purpose with all necessary modifications.

10 First Treasury observer

- (1) The first Treasury observer may be nominated by the Secretary to the Treasury before the main commencement (with the nomination to take effect on that commencement).
- (2) Clause 23 of Schedule 2 applies for that purpose with all necessary modifications.

11 Minimum number of meetings of MPC

A requirement in this Act to have at least 4 meetings of the MPC each year does not apply to the year in which this clause comes into force.

12 Transitional provisions for office holders

- (1) The person holding office at the commencement of this clause—
 - (a) as Governor must be treated as continuing to hold that office for the balance of the term for which that person was appointed:
 - (b) as Deputy Governor must be treated as continuing to hold that office for the balance of the term for which that person was appointed (and may be reappointed under section 43 at the end of that term for 1 further term of up to 5 years):
 - (c) as chairperson or deputy chairperson of the Board must be treated as continuing to hold that office for the balance of the term for which that person was appointed.
- (2) This clause does not limit any provision of this Act under which a person referred to in subclause (1) may be removed from office or under which that person otherwise ceases to hold office.
- (3) Section 44(1) (as in force after the main commencement) is subject to subclause (1)(b).

Part 2

Provision relating to Financial Markets (Derivatives Margin and Benchmarking) Reform Amendment Act 2019

Schedule 1 Part 2: inserted, on 31 August 2019, by section 8 of the Financial Markets (Derivatives Margin and Benchmarking) Reform Amendment Act 2019 (2019 No 46).

13 Provision relating to enforcing security interest over collateral for qualifying derivative

The amendments made by subpart 1 of Part 1 of the Financial Markets (Derivatives Margin and Benchmarking) Reform Amendment Act 2019 apply to—

- (a) a qualifying derivative entered into before the commencement of this clause if, on that commencement, any obligations remain under or in relation to the derivative (whether the obligations are contingent or otherwise); and
- (b) a qualifying derivative entered into on or after the commencement of this clause.

Schedule 1 clause 13: inserted, on 31 August 2019, by section 8 of the Financial Markets (Derivatives Margin and Benchmarking) Reform Amendment Act 2019 (2019 No 46).

Schedule 2

Remit and monetary policy committee

ss 11, 63M

Schedule 2: replaced, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Contents

	Page
1 Interpretation	224
Part 1	
Remit	
2 Bank's advice on remit to be issued under section 10	225
3 Process for developing advice	225
4 Period during which remit is in force	225
5 Publication and presentation of remit	226
6 Remit may be replaced or issued	226
7 Status of remit <i>[Repealed]</i>	227
Part 2	
MPC and its members	
<i>Appointment of members</i>	
8 Appointment of internal and external members	227
9 Board must consult Governor	228
10 Validity of appointments and acts done by MPC	228
11 Qualifications of internal and external members	228
12 Requirements before appointment	229
13 Term of appointment	229
14 Extension of term	230
15 Criteria for appointment of internal or external members	230
<i>When members cease to hold office</i>	
16 Internal or external member ceases to hold office	230
17 Internal or external member may continue in office at end of term	231
18 Resignation of internal or external member	231
19 Removal of internal or external member	231
20 Other provisions relating to removal	232
21 No compensation for loss of office	232
22 Effect of removal on other positions	232
<i>Treasury observer</i>	
23 Treasury observer	232
24 Conditions of performing role as Treasury observer	233
25 Replacing Treasury observer	233
26 Function of Treasury observer	233

	<i>Chairperson and deputy chairperson of MPC</i>	
27	Chairperson	233
28	Duties of chairperson	234
29	Deputy Governor may act as chairperson	234
	<i>Accountability for duties</i>	
30	Accountability of members to Minister	234
	<i>Collective duties</i>	
31	Formulating monetary policy	234
32	Compliance with charter	235
	<i>Individual duties of members</i>	
33	Member must act consistently with remit, charter, code, and Act	235
34	Member must act with honesty and integrity	235
35	Member must act in good faith	235
36	Member must act with reasonable care, diligence, and skill	235
37	Member must disclose if member is likely to become disqualified	236
38	Use of information by external member	236
39	Other individual duties of chairperson	236
	<i>Meeting procedures</i>	
40	Regular meetings	236
41	Methods of holding meetings	236
42	Quorum	237
43	Emergency procedures	237
44	Voting at meetings	238
45	Unanimous written resolutions	238
46	Meeting record	238
	<i>Procedure generally</i>	
47	Procedure generally	239
	<i>Remuneration of external members</i>	
48	Remuneration of external members	239

1 Interpretation

In this schedule,—

collective duty means a duty under clause 31 or 32

external member means a member of the MPC who is not an employee or officer of the Bank

individual duty means a duty under clauses 33 to 39

internal member means a member of the MPC who is an employee or officer of the Bank (other than the Governor or Deputy Governor)

member means a member of the MPC.

Schedule 2 clause 1: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Part 1 Remit

Schedule 2 Part 1: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

2 Bank's advice on remit to be issued under section 10

- (1) The Bank must, no later than 3 months before the specified date, give the Minister advice (**remit advice**) about a remit that the Minister is to issue under section 10.
- (2) If the Bank fails to give remit advice within the time frame set out in this clause, the Minister may issue the remit without receiving the advice.
- (3) The Bank must, as soon as practicable after the remit is issued, publish a copy of the remit advice on an Internet site maintained by, or on behalf of, the Bank.
- (4) In this clause, **specified date** means, in relation to a remit that will be issued to replace another remit (the **existing remit**), the date on which the term of the existing remit will expire.

Schedule 2 clause 2: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

3 Process for developing advice

- (1) The Governor must, before the remit advice is given, consult the MPC.
- (2) The Bank must, before the remit advice is given,—
 - (a) seek the views of members of the public on the matters that the Bank considers would assist it to prepare the advice; and
 - (b) have regard to the comments that are provided by those members of the public within the time and in the manner specified by the Bank; and
 - (c) consult the Minister on the scope of the remit advice.
- (3) *See* section 63G, which provides for the Bank to seek the views of members of the public on a replacement charter.

Schedule 2 clause 3: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

4 Period during which remit is in force

- (1) A remit issued under section 10 (or Schedule 1 or clause 6 of this schedule) is in force for 5 years on and from—
 - (a) the date on which it is issued; or
 - (b) a later date specified in the remit.
- (2) However,—

- (a) the Minister may, by notice to the Bank, extend the period for which a remit under section 10 (or clause 3 of Schedule 1) is in force for a period of up to 6 months if the Minister considers that an extension is necessary or desirable:
 - (b) a remit issued under clause 6 of this schedule is in force for less than 5 years if the order under that clause—
 - (i) specifies that the order is in force for a shorter term; or
 - (ii) is revoked before the expiry of the 5-year period.
- (3) The Minister's notice under subclause (2)(a) must be—
 - (a) published in the *Gazette*; and
 - (b) published on an Internet site maintained by, or on behalf of, the Bank.
- (4) The Bank must, as soon as practicable, update remit advice that it has previously given if—
 - (a) the advice was given before the term of the current remit is extended under subclause (2)(a); and
 - (b) the Minister requests the Bank to update the advice.
- (5) See sections 12 to 15A (which provide for when a remit is in force when an Order in Council is made under section 12).

Schedule 2 clause 4: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

5 Publication and presentation of remit

- (1) The Minister must, as soon as practicable after a remit is issued under section 10 (or clause 3 of Schedule 1),—
 - (a) notify the issue of the remit in the *Gazette*; and
 - (b) present a copy of the remit to the House of Representatives.
- (2) If a remit is issued under section 10 (or clause 3 of Schedule 1), the Bank must publish a copy of the remit on an Internet site maintained by, or on behalf of, the Bank.

Schedule 2 clause 5: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

6 Remit may be replaced or issued

- (1) The Governor-General may, by Order in Council made on the recommendation of the Minister,—
 - (a) replace a remit issued under section 10 (or Schedule 1 or this clause) before the term of that remit expires; or
 - (b) issue a new remit as referred to in section 14(2)(b).
- (2) The Minister must, before making a recommendation,—
 - (a) consult the Bank on the proposed remit; and

- (b) consider the Bank's comments (if any) on the proposal.
- (3) The MPC may ask the Minister to make a recommendation.
- (4) A remit may be replaced before the expiry of its term only in accordance with this clause or section 13.
- (5) Section 10(2) to (4) applies with all necessary modifications.
- (6) Despite section 48 of the Legislation Act 2019, a remit may not be amended.
- (7) Subclause (6) does not prevent the operational objectives in a remit from being amended or replaced as referred to in section 19(4)(b).
- (8) An order under this clause is secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements).

Legislation Act 2019 requirements for secondary legislation made under this clause

Publication	PCO must publish it on the legislation website and notify it in the <i>Gazette</i>	LA19 s 69(1)(c)
Presentation	The Minister must present it to the House of Representatives	LA19 s 114, Sch 1 cl 32(1)(a)
Disallowance	It may be disallowed by the House of Representatives	LA19 ss 115, 116

This note is not part of the Act.

Schedule 2 clause 6: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Schedule 2 clause 6(6): amended, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

Schedule 2 clause 6(8): inserted, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

7 Status of remit

[Repealed]

Schedule 2 clause 7: repealed, on 28 October 2021, by section 3 of the Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7).

Part 2 MPC and its members

Schedule 2 Part 2: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Appointment of members

Heading: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

8 Appointment of internal and external members

The Minister must appoint the internal and external members on the recommendation of the Board.

Schedule 2 clause 8: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

9 Board must consult Governor

The Board must consult the Governor before making a recommendation under clause 8 in respect of an internal member.

Schedule 2 clause 9: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

10 Validity of appointments and acts done by MPC

- (1) The appointment of a person under clause 8 is not invalid only because a defect existed in the appointment of the person.
- (2) Nothing done by the MPC is invalid because of—
 - (a) a vacancy in the membership of the MPC at the time the thing was done; or
 - (b) the subsequent discovery of a defect in the appointment of a person acting as a member; or
 - (c) the subsequent discovery that the person was disqualified from continuing to hold office as a member.

Schedule 2 clause 10: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

11 Qualifications of internal and external members

- (1) A natural person who is not disqualified by this clause may be appointed or reappointed, and may continue to hold office, as an internal or external member.
- (2) A person is disqualified if the person is—
 - (a) a member of Parliament; or
 - (b) a director or an employee of—
 - (i) a registered bank; or
 - (ii) a licensed NBDT as defined in the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013; or
 - (iii) a licensed insurer; or
 - (iv) a relevant operator of an FMI as defined in section 46(4); or
 - (c) a chief executive of a Government department or an employee of a Government department, appointed under the Public Service Act 2020; or
 - (d) a member of the Board; or
 - (e) subject to a property order under the Protection of Personal and Property Rights Act 1988; or
 - (f) an undischarged bankrupt; or
 - (g) a person who is convicted of any offence punishable by imprisonment for a term of 2 years or more; or

- (h) a person who is convicted of any offence punishable by imprisonment for a term of less than 2 years and is sentenced to imprisonment for that offence; or
 - (i) prohibited from being a director or promoter of, or being concerned or taking part in the management of, an incorporated or unincorporated body under the Companies Act 1993, or the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013, or the Takeovers Act 1993.
- (3) A member must be treated as having resigned office if that person is prohibited from continuing to hold office under this clause.

Schedule 2 clause 11: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Schedule 2 clause 11(2)(b)(iv): inserted, on 11 May 2021, by section 162 of the Financial Market Infrastructures Act 2021 (2021 No 13).

Schedule 2 clause 11(2)(c): amended, on 7 August 2020, by section 135 of the Public Service Act 2020 (2020 No 40).

12 Requirements before appointment

- (1) Before a person is appointed under clause 8, the person must—
- (a) consent in writing to being a member; and
 - (b) certify that the person is not disqualified from being a member; and
 - (c) disclose to the Minister the nature and extent (including monetary value, if quantifiable) of all interests that the person has at that time, or is likely to have, in matters relating to the MPC.
- (2) The Board must notify the Minister of a failure to comply with subclause (1)(c) as soon as practicable after becoming aware of the failure.

Schedule 2 clause 12: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

13 Term of appointment

- (1) An internal member must be appointed for a term of up to 5 years and may be reappointed for 1 further term as an internal member of up to 5 years.
- (2) An external member must be appointed for a term of up to 4 years and may be reappointed for 1 further term as an external member of up to 4 years.
- (3) This clause does not prevent a person who has served as a member in a particular capacity from being appointed, or holding office, as a member in a different capacity.

Examples

A, as an employee of the Bank, has been an internal member of the MPC for 2 terms.

If A becomes the Deputy Governor, A may hold office as a member in that capacity.

If A ceases to be an employee of the Bank, A may be appointed as an external member for 1 or 2 further terms.

Schedule 2 clause 13: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

14 Extension of term

- (1) The Minister may, by written notice to an internal or external member (with a copy to the Governor and the Board), extend the member's term of appointment by up to 6 months.
- (2) If a member's term is extended and the member is reappointed for a further term in the same capacity (for example, as an employee of the Bank), the length of the further term must be reduced by the length of the extension.
- (3) Subclause (2) does not prevent the further term from being extended under subclause (1).
- (4) The Minister must ensure that the following are notified in the *Gazette* as soon as practicable after an extension is made:
 - (a) the name of the member; and
 - (b) the period of the extension.

Schedule 2 clause 14: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

15 Criteria for appointment of internal or external members

- (1) The Minister may only appoint as an internal or external member a person who, in the Minister's opinion, has the appropriate knowledge, skills, and experience to assist the MPC to perform its functions (for example, in economics, banking, or public policy).
- (2) A person must not be appointed on the basis that the person represents a particular industry sector.

Schedule 2 clause 15: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

When members cease to hold office

Heading: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

16 Internal or external member ceases to hold office

An internal or external member ceases to hold office if the member—

- (a) dies; or
- (b) resigns under clause 18 (*see also* clause 11(3)); or
- (c) is removed from office under clause 19; or
- (d) otherwise ceases to hold office under this Act.

Schedule 2 clause 16: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

17 Internal or external member may continue in office at end of term

- (1) An internal or external member continues in office despite the expiry of the member's term of office until—
 - (a) the member is reappointed; or
 - (b) the member's successor is appointed; or
 - (c) the Minister informs the member by written notice (with a copy to the Governor and the Board) that the member is not to be reappointed and no successor is to be appointed at that time.
- (2) The Minister must, before acting under subclause (1)(c), be satisfied that there is a good reason for not appointing a successor at that time.
- (3) This clause is subject to clause 16.

Schedule 2 clause 17: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

18 Resignation of internal or external member

- (1) An internal or external member may resign from office by written notice to the Minister (with a copy to the Governor and the Board) signed by the member.
- (2) The resignation is effective on receipt by the Minister of the notice or at any later time specified in the notice.

Schedule 2 clause 18: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

19 Removal of internal or external member

- (1) The Governor-General may, by Order in Council, on the advice of the Minister, remove an internal or external member from office.
- (2) The Minister may only give the advice in relation to a member (**M**) if the Minister is satisfied that—
 - (a) the MPC has breached a collective duty (but *see* subclause (3)); or
 - (b) M has breached an individual duty; or
 - (c) M has been absent from 3 or more meetings within a term of appointment without the consent of the chairperson; or
 - (d) M has been guilty of misconduct (including a breach of the code of conduct); or
 - (e) M has obstructed, hindered, or prevented the MPC or the Board from discharging responsibilities under this Act.
- (3) Subclause (2)(a) applies to M only if the Minister is satisfied that M has agreed or consented to 1 or more decisions or acts of the MPC that have materially contributed to the breach of the collective duty.

- (4) The Minister may tender advice under this clause whether or not the Board has made a recommendation under section 53(5) that the member be removed from office.

Schedule 2 clause 19: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

20 Other provisions relating to removal

- (1) The Minister may advise the removal of an internal or external member with as little formality and technicality, and as much expedition, as is permitted by—
- (a) the principles of natural justice; and
 - (b) a proper consideration of the matter.
- (2) The Minister may have regard to the process undertaken by the Board under section 53(5) in considering what is required for the purposes of subclause (1)(a) and (b).

Schedule 2 clause 20: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

21 No compensation for loss of office

An internal or external member is not entitled to any compensation or other payment or benefit relating to the member ceasing, for any reason, to hold office as a member.

Schedule 2 clause 21: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

22 Effect of removal on other positions

An employee or an officer of the Bank who is removed as a member under clause 19 is not, because of that removal, removed from their position as an employee or officer.

Schedule 2 clause 22: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Treasury observer

Heading: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

23 Treasury observer

- (1) The Secretary to the Treasury must ensure that the Secretary, a Deputy Secretary to the Treasury, or any other Treasury officer or employee is nominated to be a Treasury observer.
- (2) The Treasury observer has the same rights to attend and speak at a meeting of the MPC as a member but has no right to vote on any question before the MPC and is not subject to the duties that apply to members.

- (3) The nomination must be made by written notice to the Governor (with a copy to the officer or employee if it is a person other than the Secretary to the Treasury).

Schedule 2 clause 23: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

24 Conditions of performing role as Treasury observer

- (1) The Treasury observer must perform that role subject to any conditions that are agreed by the Secretary to the Treasury and the Governor.
- (2) Those conditions must include matters relating to confidentiality and avoiding conflicts of interest.
- (3) Those conditions remain in effect until the Secretary to the Treasury and the Governor agree to amend the conditions (regardless of changes to the person who holds any office or role).

Schedule 2 clause 24: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

25 Replacing Treasury observer

The Secretary to the Treasury may, at any time and entirely at the Secretary's discretion, replace the Treasury observer by giving written notice to the Governor.

Schedule 2 clause 25: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

26 Function of Treasury observer

The function of the Treasury observer is to—

- (a) support decision making by the MPC (for example, by sharing information on fiscal policy); and
- (b) facilitate the co-ordination of monetary and fiscal policy; and
- (c) carry out any other function agreed between the Governor and the Secretary to the Treasury.

Schedule 2 clause 26: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Chairperson and deputy chairperson of MPC

Heading: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

27 Chairperson

The Governor is the chairperson of the MPC.

Schedule 2 clause 27: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

28 Duties of chairperson

The chairperson must—

- (a) preside at meetings of the MPC; and
- (b) perform all other duties imposed on the chairperson by this Act or the charter.

Schedule 2 clause 28: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

29 Deputy Governor may act as chairperson

In the case of the absence or incapacity of the Governor, section 47 applies in respect of the duties, responsibilities, functions, and powers of the chairperson of the MPC.

Schedule 2 clause 29: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Accountability for duties

Heading: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

30 Accountability of members to Minister

- (1) Members of the MPC must comply with—
 - (a) the MPC's collective duties; and
 - (b) their individual duties as members.
- (2) Members are accountable to the Minister for performing their duties as members.

Schedule 2 clause 30: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Collective duties

Heading: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

31 Formulating monetary policy

- (1) The MPC must formulate monetary policy in a manner consistent with—
 - (a) the economic objectives set out in section 8 (or in an Order in Council in force under section 12); and
 - (b) the remit.
- (2) The MPC must perform or exercise its functions, powers, or duties in a manner that is consistent with this Act.

Schedule 2 clause 31: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

32 Compliance with charter

The MPC must ensure that it complies with the charter.

Schedule 2 clause 32: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Individual duties of members

Heading: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

33 Member must act consistently with remit, charter, code, and Act

A member must act in a manner that is consistent with—

- (a) the remit; and
- (b) the charter; and
- (c) the code of conduct; and
- (d) this Act.

Schedule 2 clause 33: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

34 Member must act with honesty and integrity

A member must, when acting as a member, act with honesty and integrity.

Schedule 2 clause 34: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

35 Member must act in good faith

A member, when acting as a member, must act in good faith and without regard to the member's own interests.

Schedule 2 clause 35: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

36 Member must act with reasonable care, diligence, and skill

A member must, when acting as a member, exercise the care, diligence, and skill that a reasonable member would exercise in the same circumstances, taking into account (without limitation)—

- (a) the nature of the functions of the MPC; and
- (b) the nature of the action; and
- (c) the position of the member and the nature of the responsibilities undertaken by the member.

Schedule 2 clause 36: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

37 Member must disclose if member is likely to become disqualified

If an internal or external member becomes aware that the member is likely to become disqualified under clause 11, the member must disclose that fact to the Board and the Minister as soon as practicable.

Schedule 2 clause 37: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

38 Use of information by external member

An external member who has information in the member's capacity as a member, being information that would not otherwise be available to the member, must not disclose that information to any person, or make use of or act on the information, except—

- (a) for the purposes of the performance or exercise of the functions, powers, or duties of the MPC; or
- (b) as permitted or required by the charter; or
- (c) to comply with the provisions of the code of conduct that relate to the disclosure of interests; or
- (d) as otherwise required by law.

Schedule 2 clause 38: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

39 Other individual duties of chairperson

The duties imposed under this schedule on the chairperson are individual duties of the Governor (and of the Deputy Governor if the Deputy is acting under clause 29).

Schedule 2 clause 39: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Meeting procedures

Heading: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

40 Regular meetings

The MPC must hold a meeting at least 4 times a year.

Schedule 2 clause 40: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

41 Methods of holding meetings

- (1) A meeting of the MPC may be held—
 - (a) by a quorum of the members, being assembled together at the time and place appointed for the meeting; or
 - (b) by means of audio, audio and visual, or electronic communication provided that—

- (i) all of the members who wish to participate in the meeting have access to the technology needed to participate in the meeting; and
 - (ii) a quorum of members can simultaneously communicate with each other throughout the meeting.
- (2) This clause is subject to clause 43.
Schedule 2 clause 41: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

42 Quorum

- (1) A quorum for a meeting of the MPC is the number that is a majority of the members.
- (2) However, the quorum must include—
 - (a) the Governor or the Deputy Governor; and
 - (b) 1 internal member (unless both the Governor and the Deputy Governor are present); and
 - (c) at least 1 external member.
- (3) No business may be transacted at a meeting of the MPC if a quorum is not present.
- (4) This clause is subject to clause 43.
Schedule 2 clause 42: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

43 Emergency procedures

- (1) Despite the lack of a quorum, the Governor and other members of the MPC that are available (if any) may make any decision on behalf of the MPC or perform or exercise any other function, power, or duty of the MPC if the Governor is satisfied that—
 - (a) exceptional circumstances exist; and
 - (b) an urgent action is necessary to prevent, correct, or mitigate harm to the economy; and
 - (c) despite the use of all reasonable means available, other members of the MPC have not been able to be contacted on the matter or are unable to fully participate in dealing with the matter; and
 - (d) action on the matter is required before a quorum will be able to be obtained.
- (2) If a decision is made or other thing is done under this clause,—
 - (a) the Governor must make a record of—
 - (i) the Governor's reasons for being satisfied of the matters referred to in subclause (1); and
 - (ii) the decision or thing; and

- (b) the Governor must, as soon as practicable, provide a copy of that record to—
 - (i) the Minister; and
 - (ii) the Board; and
 - (iii) the members of the MPC that were not available when the decision was made or the other thing was done.

Schedule 2 clause 43: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

44 Voting at meetings

- (1) Each member has 1 vote.
- (2) In addition to the chairperson's general vote, the chairperson at a meeting has, in the case of an equality of votes, a casting vote.
- (3) A resolution of the MPC is passed if it is agreed to by all members present without dissent or if a majority of the votes cast on it are in favour of it.
- (4) A member present at a meeting of the MPC is presumed to have agreed to, and to have voted in favour of, a resolution of the MPC unless the member expressly dissents from or votes against the resolution at the meeting.
- (5) Subclause (4) is subject to the charter (which may vary or disapply the matter referred to in that subclause or provide for an alternative matter).

Schedule 2 clause 44: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

45 Unanimous written resolutions

- (1) A resolution signed or assented to in writing (whether sent by delivery or electronic communication) by all members who are entitled to vote on the matter is as valid and effectual as if it had been passed at a meeting of the MPC duly called and constituted.
- (2) The resolution may consist of several documents containing the same resolution, each signed or assented to in writing by 1 or more members.

Schedule 2 clause 45: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

46 Meeting record

- (1) The Bank must publish a summary record of each meeting of the MPC on an Internet site maintained by, or on behalf of, the Bank.
- (2) The summary record must include the information required by the charter.

Schedule 2 clause 46: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Procedure generally

Heading: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

47 Procedure generally

The MPC may regulate its own procedure except as provided in this Act and in the charter and code of conduct.

Schedule 2 clause 47: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Remuneration of external members

Heading: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

48 Remuneration of external members

- (1) An external member is entitled to be—
- (a) paid remuneration by the Bank for services as an external member at a rate and of a kind determined by the Minister in accordance with the fees framework; and
 - (b) reimbursed by the Bank for actual and reasonable travelling and other expenses incurred in carrying out the member's duties as a member in accordance with the fees framework.
- (2) In subclause (1), **fees framework** means the framework determined by the Government from time to time for the classification and remuneration of statutory and other bodies in which the Crown has an interest.

Schedule 2 clause 48: inserted, on 1 April 2019, by section 37 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59).

Schedule 3

General provisions relating to material incorporated by reference

[Repealed]

ss 81AA(3), 157S(3), 157W(3)

Schedule 3: repealed, on 1 May 2014, by section 92(1) of the Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104).

Schedule 4

General provisions relating to search warrants issued under Part 5D

[Repealed]

s 157ZM(2)

Schedule 4: repealed, on 1 October 2012, by section 298(7) of the Search and Surveillance Act 2012 (2012 No 24).

Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1993

Public Act	1993 No 118
Date of assent	28 September 1993
Commencement	see section 1(2)

1 Short Title and commencement

- (1) This Act may be cited as the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1993, and shall be read together with and deemed part of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Act 1989 (hereinafter referred to as “the principal Act”).
- (2) This Act shall come into force on 1 July 1994.

5 Transitional provisions

Nothing in section 4 applies to or affects—

- (a) a registered bank that was subject to statutory management under the principal Act immediately before the commencement of this Act;
- (b) any transaction entered into by a registered bank or anything done by any person before the commencement of this Act—

and, in any such case, sections 308 (except subsection (1)(d)), 309 to 311C, and 319 to 321 of the Companies Act 1955, as in force before the commencement of this Act, shall continue to apply to the registered bank in all respects and with such modifications as may be necessary, as if—

- (c) the registered bank were a company that was being wound up under the Companies Act 1955; and
- (d) the statutory manager of the registered bank was the liquidator of the company; and
- (e) the date on which the registered bank became subject to statutory management was the date of the commencement of the winding up.

Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003

Public Act	2003 No 46
Date of assent	20 August 2003
Commencement	see section 2

1 Title

- (1) This Act is the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003.
- (2) In this Act, the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Act 1989 is called “the principal Act”.

2 Commencement

This Act comes into force on the day after the date on which it receives the Royal assent.

Part 3 Miscellaneous

Transitional provisions

50 Savings relating to authorisations or consents under Part 4 of principal Act

Any authorisations or consents relating to the use of a restricted word that were granted under section 65 of the principal Act before the commencement of this Act remain in force.

51 Temporary exemption from Part 4 of principal Act

- (1) This section applies to any person who,—
 - (a) immediately before the commencement of this Act, was lawfully entitled to use, or was lawfully using, a name or title that included a restricted word; and
 - (b) after the commencement of this Act, can no longer lawfully use that name or title.
- (2) A person to whom this section applies may, despite anything in Part 4 of the principal Act, continue to use that name or title for a period of 6 months commencing on the date of commencement of this Act.

52 Existing applications

An application for registration as a registered bank under the principal Act that has been made, but not determined or withdrawn, before the date of commencement of this Act must continue to be dealt with in accordance with the

principal Act and any regulations made under that Act as if this Act had not been enacted.

Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Covered Bonds) Amendment Act 2013

Public Act	2013 No 103
Date of assent	3 December 2013
Commencement	see section 2

1 Title

This Act is the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Covered Bonds) Amendment Act 2013.

2 Commencement

This Act comes into force on the 7th day after the date on which it receives the Royal assent.

3 Principal Act

This Act amends the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Act 1989 (the **principal Act**).

Part 2

Transitional provisions and amendments to other Acts

11 Transitional provisions

- (1) The amendments made by this Act apply in relation to existing covered bond programmes and issuers on and from the date that is 9 months after this Act comes into force.
- (2) However, despite subsection (1), an issuer may, in relation to an existing covered bond programme, make an application under section 139E of the principal Act (as inserted by section 9 of this Act) at any time on or after the date on which this Act comes into force and, in that case,—
 - (a) section 139E(4) and (5)(a) and (b) of the principal Act (as inserted by section 9 of this Act) apply on and from the date on which the application is approved or declined under section 139G of the principal Act (as inserted by section 9 of this Act); and
 - (b) all other amendments made by this Act apply on and from the date of the application.
- (3) To avoid doubt, on and from the date specified in subsection (1),—
 - (a) all amendments made by this Act apply in relation to existing covered bond programmes; and

-
- (b) covered bonds must not be issued under an existing covered bond programme unless the programme is registered under section 139G of the principal Act (as inserted by section 9 of this Act).
 - (4) In this section, **existing covered bond programme** means a covered bond programme that was established before this Act came into force.

Notes

1 *General*

This is a consolidation of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Act 1989 that incorporates the amendments made to the legislation so that it shows the law as at its stated date.

2 *Legal status*

A consolidation is taken to correctly state, as at its stated date, the law enacted or made by the legislation consolidated and by the amendments. This presumption applies unless the contrary is shown.

Section 78 of the Legislation Act 2019 provides that this consolidation, published as an electronic version, is an official version. A printed version of legislation that is produced directly from this official electronic version is also an official version.

3 *Editorial and format changes*

The Parliamentary Counsel Office makes editorial and format changes to consolidations using the powers under subpart 2 of Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019. See also PCO editorial conventions for consolidations.

4 *Amendments incorporated in this consolidation*

Legislation Act (Amendments to Legislation) Regulations 2021 (LI 2021/247): regulation 107

Financial Market Infrastructures Act 2021 (2021 No 13): section 162

Secondary Legislation Act 2021 (2021 No 7): section 3

Public Service Act 2020 (2020 No 40): section 135

Financial Markets (Derivatives Margin and Benchmarking) Reform Amendment Act 2019 (2019 No 46): Part 1 subpart 1

Contempt of Court Act 2019 (2019 No 44): section 29

Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Monetary Policy) Amendment Act 2018 (2018 No 59)

Land Transfer Act 2017 (2017 No 30): section 250

Legislation (Confirmable Instruments) Amendment Act 2015 (2015 No 120): section 14

Companies Amendment Act 2013 (2013 No 111): section 14

Non-bank Deposit Takers Act 2013 (2013 No 104): section 92(1)

Reserve Bank of New Zealand (Covered Bonds) Amendment Act 2013 (2013 No 103)

Financial Reporting (Amendments to Other Enactments) Act 2013 (2013 No 102): section 126

Financial Markets (Repeals and Amendments) Act 2013 (2013 No 70): section 150

Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2013 (2013 No 62)

Search and Surveillance Act 2012 (2012 No 24): sections 297, 298

Criminal Procedure Act 2011 (2011 No 81): section 413

Financial Markets Authority Act 2011 (2011 No 5): sections 82, 84(3)

Insurance (Prudential Supervision) Act 2010 (2010 No 111): section 241(1)

Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2009 (2009 No 53)
Disability (United Nations Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities) Act 2008 (2008 No 64): section 15
Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 59)
Property Law Act 2007 (2007 No 91): section 364(1)
Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2007 (2007 No 76)
Evidence Act 2006 (2006 No 69): section 216
Companies Amendment Act (No 2) 2006 (2006 No 62): section 17
Companies Amendment Act 2006 (2006 No 56): section 41
Insolvency Act 2006 (2006 No 55): section 445
Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2006 (2006 No 51)
Securities Amendment Act 2006 (2006 No 46): section 25
Overseas Investment Act 2005 (2005 No 82): section 75
State Sector Amendment Act (No 2) 2004 (2004 No 114): section 19(1)
Public Finance Amendment Act 2004 (2004 No 113): section 37(1)
Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 46)
Human Rights Amendment Act 2001 (2001 No 96): section 70(1)
Public Audit Act 2001 (2001 No 10): section 53
Personal Property Securities Act 1999 (1999 No 126): section 191(1)
Trustee Banks Restructuring Act Repeal Act 1999 (1999 No 53): section 5
Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1999 (1999 No 22)
Treasurer (Statutory References) Act 1997 (1997 No 20): section 2
Financial Reporting Amendment Act 1997 (1997 No 17): section 6
Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act (No 2) 1995 (1995 No 34)
Banking Act Repeal Act 1995 (1995 No 32): section 2(4)
Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1995 (1995 No 5)
Income Tax Act 1994 (1994 No 164): section YB 3(1)
Company Law Reform (Transitional Provisions) Act 1994 (1994 No 16): section 2
Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1993 (1993 No 118)
Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1992 (1992 No 32)
Reserve Bank of New Zealand Amendment Act 1990 (1990 No 96)
Public Finance Act 1989 (1989 No 44): section 65R(3)